

A COMPLETE
SYNTAX

OF THE
LATIN TONGUE,
Compar'd with the *English*.
In Three PARTS.

WHEREIN

1st, The Analogous Rules are distinguish'd from those that are Elliptical and Idiomatical, and fitted for the Lowest Forms in Grammar Schools.

2^{dly}, The Elliptical and Idiomatical Rules are all reduced under their Principal and Analogous Rules, and fitted for those of higher Attainments.

And lastly, To every Chapter are added Notes or Criticisms on the several Rules, to perfect those of the highest Forms.

With an **APPENDIX** of the Elegant Use of the Prepositions.

Principally design'd for the Use of
Norwich School.

By **ROBERT PATE, M. A.**
Master of the said School.

Non satis est Grammatico Grammaticè dicere nisi & Latine dicat, quorum illud & præceptionibus & Analogiis petitur, hoc ex Latine loquentium consuetudine, Erasmi.

NORWICH: Printed by J. Collins. 1713.



THE P R E F A C E.

IT will appear by these following Sheets, both how nice and difficult a Thing it is, to follow so copious a Tongue as the Latin, through all its Varieties and Turnings, and how great Need there is of Helps to that Purpose; as also into how little Compass the Syntax of that Tongue may be brought, far as is necessary for young Beginners, in order to express themselves in Latin; and all that is further needful to initiate them in that Tongue is only in order to parse such extraordinary and uncommon Passages, as they must sometimes meet with in the Authors they learn, which being accordingly taken Notice of in a Syntax by themselves, it is very easy for their Master to bring them under their proper Head or Rule, from whence they deviate, or to which they are to be added; and to shew them exemplified and explained in the larger Syntax, which is composed on purpose to take Notice of such Deviations and Additions, as at present are not thought necessary for them to make Latin by. Thus whereas in the little Syntax it is only said that *of* after Adjectives of the Neuter Gender signifying Quantity, as much, more, little, less, is a Sign of the Genitive Case; if the Learner should find a Passage in his Author, where *hoc*, *id*, *idem*, or *aliud* is joyn'd with a Genitive even without the Particle *of* between, it may be shown him exemplified in the great Syntax, where

The P R E F A C E.

also he will sometimes meet with the Reason, and always the Limitation of such Additions and Deviations from his Rule, which will be as useful to him after it has been shown him, as if his Memory had been further burthen'd with a Rule to that Purpose. But then this scanty Knowledge of Things will not serve always: There will come a Time before he goes to the University, wherein it will be expected from him, that he should be acquainted in some Measure with the most difficult Authors in the Latin Tongue, and such as take the greatest Liberty of deviating from the ordinary Rules of Syntax, which Authors he must needs be very much puzzled to make out, that was never well appriz'd beforehand of those Ungrammatical Expressions, that Custom has introduced, and that are to be met with in the Classics. At which Time also it will be expected from him, that he himself in his own Compositions, to adorn his Style, should launch out into all those Varieties which he finds allow'd by the Usage and Authority of the best Writers; to which End it will be altogether necessary at last, that the Scholar be by the compleatest Grammar possible, let into a good Relish of the Latin Tongue, and all the Copia's of it. The Truth on't is, a Thing of this Nature ought to have these Two good Qualities, to be Concise, and Comprehensive; Concise, in order to be quickly learnt by Heart, and well retain'd in Memory; Comprehensive, in order to a complete Knowledge of the Tongue. But in a Language so copious, and full of Variety, as the Latin Tongue is, that seems as impossible as to make Contradictions meet. All therefore that is to be done in this Case is, to distinguish between

between Things of ordinary Use, and such as are more rare and extraordinary; to make the first Matter of Rule to be got by Heart, and the latter Matter of Annotations, to be observ'd only and turn'd to as Occasion serves. And to this Purpose Syntax naturally divides itself into Three Parts: First, Into such Rules as universally obtain in all Languages, being the more plain and natural Way of speaking, and so may be call'd the General Syntax of Tongues. Secondly, The particular Variations of some one Tongue from the General Syntax of Tongues, and so may be call'd the Particular Syntax of that one Tongue. And forasmuch as no one Tongue is so consistent in every Thing with itself, but that in some Particulars it is sometimes found to vary from its own Rules, hence arises a Third Part of Syntax, which is the Variations of that Tongue in some particular Cases from itself, that is, from its more common Usages. Agreeable to this Division of Syntax is the Method of these following Treatises. The First of which I propose to be learnt by Children, as soon as they are sufficiently instructed in the Formation of Nouns and Verbs, and the Case that each Preposition governs, being sufficient to teach them to express any thing in plain Grammar Latin, as they call it. And thus Syntax (so far as Beginners are concern'd) will be brought into a little Compass, and easily come up to young Childrens Capacities, as being contain'd in a few Rules, and those agreeable in a great Measure to the Customs and Usages of their Mother Tongue, to which they have a constant Respect. And as soon as Use and Practice has made these few Rules familiar to the Learner,

iv The P R E F A C E.

Learner, he is then to proceed to the Elliptical and Idiomatical Syntax, which is design'd in some Measure to file off the Roughness, and soften the Barbarity of their former Stile, teaching them to omit some of those Words, which their Mother Tongue, and consequently the Analogical Syntax, that chimes in with it, had allow'd them to express; and taking off the Baldness of their former Expressions, by giving them a new Turn more agreeable to the Customs and Usages of the Romans. The Third Volume of Syntax is that which I call the Critical Syntax, being Notes on the Two former, to shew the Liberty that Authors take, of varying from the Rules of the former Syntaxes. And under some more General Rules, in which it seem'd to me difficult to find out all the Particulars included, I have descended to every particular Noun or Verb contain'd under that Rule, and have given Authorities for the several Governments of each Word, at least of those that more rarely occur in Authors. In this last Volume I have strictly observ'd that Second necessary Qualification of a Syntax, namely, that it be Comprehensive, in order to render it Entire and Complete, and therefore have chose rather to abound than to be defective, having not (that I know of) omitted the Government of one single Word, that did not come within a General Rule; that it might always serve for a standing Criterion to examine Latin by (so far as Syntax is concern'd) whether it were truly Roman or not. And this comes up exactly to what Erasmus lays down as necessary in a Grammarian, De Pronunc. Linguae Lat. p. 9. Non satis est illi Grammaticæ dicere nisi

nisi & Latine dicat, quorum illud è præceptio-
bus & Analogiis petitur, hoc ex Latine loquen-
tium consuetudine: *Which may serve for a Com-
ment upon that Saying of Quintilian, Instit. L. 1.
Cap. 6. Mihi non inveniuste diei videtur, aliud
est Grammaticæ, aliud Latine loqui. But then
this last Volume is not design'd to be got by Heart,
as the Two former are, it is sufficient that the Scho-
lar some Time before he removes to the University,
be oblig'd to read it over carefully, and give an Ac-
count of every Note in his own Words, passing over
the Authorities, which are to be consulted only for
Information, as Occasion requires, and therefore are
put into a different Character, the Author, Book,
and Page being generally quoted, and sometimes
Lines, where the Passage seems to be very curious,
except those taken out of Cicero, which for the Vo-
luminousness of that Author, and the many Editions
of him, I chose for the most part to take out of Ni-
zolius, where any one may find from what Part they
are taken. The Quotations in the Appendix are
often not mark'd, because they are mostly taken out
of Walker's Particles, the tedious Use of which
Book they are design'd to supersede; those that are
adde'd by myself are (I believe) all referr'd to. And
that the Learner may more readily turn to any Rule,
I have follow'd the Order of the Parts of Speech;
giving first an Account of the Nouns, and the se-
veral Signs in English that direct the Scholar to the
Use of the several Cases. Then I go on to Pronouns,
and shew in what they differ from Nouns as to their
Government. Thirdly, to Verbs, shewing what Case
they govern when compounded with a Preposition,
what*

what Use there is of an Impersonal different from that of a Personal. Then the several Uses of the Sign To before the Verb. And then to the several Ways of rendring a Verbal in ing. And lastly, To the Use that Syntax makes of Adverbs and Conjunctions: And so the Whole is divided into Seven Parts. The First Part contains the Concordes, Two Chapters. The Second the Use of the oblique-Cases, Six Chapters. The Third the Rules of the Pronouns, Three Chapters. The Fourth the Rules of Verbs, Three Chapters. The Fifth the Rules of the Verbal in ing, One Chapter. The Sixth the Adverbs, Conjunctions, and the Subjunctive Mood One Chapter. The Seventh the Elegant Use of the Prepositions. This is the Method of this Syntax, which besides the Completeness of it, containing all the Niceties and Criticisms of Syntax that are worth Notice, the several Variations of Latin Idioms, so far as they are reducible to Rule, has this also further to recommend it, that its Difficulties increase gradually with the Capacity of the Child, as beginning first with the easiest and most familiar Part of Syntax, namely, the Analogous Rules, where the Phrase of the Latin is agreeable to that of our Mother Tongue, and then proceeding, as the Capacity of the Child grows, to a more difficult Part, namely, the Ellipses and Idioms of the Latin Tongue, as it differs from the English, and concluding with the Criticisms of Syntax, which require the utmost Strength of Childrens Capacities to apply, and make a due Use of. Whereas when the Analogous, Elliptical, and Idiomatical Rules are jumbled together, the Child is indiscriminately put upon all at the same Age, which

which besides the Vexation it gives him, and the Confusion it puts him into, we can no more expect he should equally comprehend, than we can imagine a Child should sometimes run at the same Age that it is learning to creep. I wish this was the only Fault of the present National Syntax, commonly call'd Lily's, for then we might make shift to pick and pull out of it such Rules, as might be adapted to the several Capacities of each Class: But when to make the Task of Teaching as tedious as possible, a Book is written in the Language it was design'd to teach; when many of the Rules are directly false; many defective, not expressing the whole that they ought to express; many unnecessary and superfluous, serving to no manner of purpose, but to prolong the Time of learning them; and a great number of Things necessary for a Grammarian to know, entirely omitted; Masters, for Uniformity's sake and to avoid the Confusion they may apprehend would arise from a Multiplicity of Grammars, may comply with the Use of Lily's Syntax; but I am confident none of them, that have had any long Experience in Teaching, have ever found it sufficient to answer its Ends, without considerable Comments and Enlargements of their own upon it. And First, That several of the Rules in Lily's Syntax are false, I shall Instance in these following: 1. Aliquando Adverbium cum Genitivo; for the Adverb and Genitive does not stand for a Nominative in partim virorum ceciderunt, &c. but is at length, Quod ad partim virorum illi, i. e. viri ceciderunt in bello. See p. 78. Note 8. An Adverb indeed may stand before a Verb, and may happen to have a Genitive after it,

b

but that *Genitive* would make no part of the *Nominative*. Suppose it had been *pars virorum*, would *virorum* have made any part of the *Nominative*?

2. *Impersonalia præcedentem Nominat. non habent.* See p. 35. Id. 1. and p. 160. Note 3.

3. *Quum duo Substantiva sic concurrunt, &c.* which is false by a *Blunder* in it, because *posterius a priore* should be *prius a posteriore*; but then the *Blunder* is as old as the *Book*.

4. Such another *Blunder* is *Verba Substantiva utrinque Nominat. expetunt, for utrinque eundem casum expetunt.*

5. At *miserere & miseresco rarius cum Dativo, &c.* is allow'd to be false by the *Oxford Notes*.

6. *Adjectivum in Neutro genere absolute, &c.* as it is here express'd seems to intimate, as if any *Adjective*, put in the *Neuter Gender* without a *Substantive*, were capable of a *Genitive*; whereas it is really limited to some very few *Adjectives*. See P. 6. Obs. 4. and p. 43. Note 6.

7. Under the *Exception to Verba abundandi*, *abundans* is brought in governing a *Genitive*, to intimate that *abundo* does so too; than which nothing is more false. See P. 70. N. 2.

8. The *Exception to Quædam accipiendi, distandi, &c.* is, that this *Ablative* is sometimes turn'd into a *Dative*, which if applied to *Verba accipiendi*, to be sure is false; for from after *accipio*, or any other *Verb* of that *Signification*, never is a *Sign* of the *Dative*: However, the *Examples* to this *Exception* are all false, and what then must become of the *Rule*? *Discedo* in the first *Example* is no more a *Verb* of receiving, than *absineo* in the second *Example* is a *Verb* of being distant, and neither *peritis* in the first, nor *bonis* in

in the second can so properly be reckon'd Datives as Ablatives: *May, flammis* after *eripe* is a very bad Instance that Verbs of taking away govern a Dative, because it may as well be Ablative by his own Rule of Prepositio in Compositione. 9. *Prisus Sapinum* ponitur absolute, cum verbo est, actum est, itum est: Whereas these are the Præterperfect Tenses of the Impersonals Passive, and have not the least Pretence to the Nature of Sapiens. 10. *Hi Genitivi militiæ, belli, &c.* is false, unless when *domi* comes just before it, or just after it. See p. 29. Id. 9. & 38. N. 5. 11. Participiorum voces, spoken in general is false; for who ever heard of *Mus casei rodens*, or *Cureus findens ligni*, or *Epicurus voluptatum sequens*. See p. 63. 12. *Quædam Adverbia loci, temporis, quantitatis.* Loci ut *ubi, ubinam, &c.* These Adverbs are put here as if they were capable of any Genitive; whereas they are limited to some few particular ones. See p. 80. And many of them omitted, p. 78, 79. 13. *Verum si proprium loci nomen, &c. in Dativo,* is a Mistake occasion'd by the old Ablatives *Tiburî, Carthagini, Anxuri.* 14. As is also *Sunt & hi Dativi adverbiales temporis, luci, vesperi,* that are all old Ablatives, which formerly ended in *i* as well as in *e*.

adly, That the Rules in Lily's Syntax are defective, under which Head come some of the Rules above-mention'd, which are only false, because defective. And besides these, first *Resolvi potest hic modus per quod & ut;* but does not tell us whether it may always be so, or when not so, or when quod is proper, or when ut is proper. See p. 115.

N 5. 2. Laus & vituperium is true, but then it is not the whole Truth; for any Descriptions without Respect to Praise or Dispraise come under the same Rule. Did Tully, when he describ'd the Bird Ibis, De Nat. Deor. that she is *Avis excelsa cruribus rigidis, corneo proceroque rostro*; or Suetonius, when he describes Julius Cæsar to be *Vir excelsa statura, colore candido, teretibus membris, ore paulo pleniore, vegetisque oculis*, design anything of Praise or Dispraise? See p. 135.

Case 6. 3. Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem significant etiam Genitivo gaudent. Which Rule how far short it is of the whole Truth may be seen, p. 94, 95. 4. Sum Genitivum postulat, &c. as *Pecus est Melibæi*; as if *pecus* was govern'd of *est*, and not rather *pecus est Melibæi* *pecus*: But tho' nothing more than the Owner is mention'd in the Rule, yet it appears by the next Rule, At hic subintelligi videtur officium, that something further was intended, namely, that the Words Part, Property, or Duty might be elegantly omitted before the Genitive; but the Rule intimates no such thing, and if it had, it would have come far short of the Truth, as may appear from p. 81, 82, 83.

5. To *Verba æstimandi genitivo gaudent*, should have been added, *qui pretium significat*, otherwise (as I have often found by Experience) Boys will be apt to think that *æstimo* governs a Genitive of the Person, as *miseror* and *reminiscor* do. 6. *Verba accusandi, damnandi, &c Genitivum postulant qui crimen significat*. Here indeed he confines the Genitive, as he ought to have done in the former Rule; but then he has confin'd it too much, and there-

therefore to complete it should have said, Qui crimen vel pœnam significat. See p. 71. N. 2. p. 73. N. 8, 9. 7 Vertitur hic Genitivus aliquando in Ablativum. This sounds as if we were at Liberty to do what we please in this Case, which is not ordinarily true, and therefore the Defect of this Rule lies in not telling us, when the Genitive is most proper, and when the Ablative. See p. 133. Case 2. 8. Imprimis verba significantia commodum aut incommodum, &c. This Rule absolutely requires the naming of Particulars, otherwise it is perfectly useless, because of Verbs that do equally signify Profit or Disprofit, some require a Dative, and others an Accusative. Thus to love, to cherish, to oblige, take an Accusative, to help, to favour, to make much of, have a Dative; to beat, to wound, to kill, have an Accusative; to resist, to threaten, to be angry with, a Dative. Nay, so far is this Rule from any Certainty, that the same Verb rendred by a different Word in Latin will require a different Case: Thus to hurt, rendred by lædo governs an Accusative, by any other Word a Dative; to hinder, rendred by impedio takes an Accusative, by any other Word a Dative; to heal, rendred by fano, an Accusative, by any other Word rather a Dative; to please, rendred by placeo, arrideo, a Dative, by dilecto an Accusative; to beseech by oro, an Accusative, by supplico a Dative. So that the Advice Quintilian gives, when he is speaking of Schema, i. e. a Way of speaking, which if not supported by the Authority of the Classics, would be reckon'd a Solécism, is no where so properly to be applied, as in this Case, Ne nimium

sis sollicitus de rationibus investigandis, interdum enim pro ratione est voluntas, & usus doctissimorum hominum, quæ pluris sunt facienda, quam Grammaticorum omnium leges. *The Author of this Syntax was sensible of this, therefore he does instance in some Particulars; yet though he spends Two Pages upon it, he is so very short of what is necessary, and much more of the whole, that I think I have said a great deal more in one Rule.* See Chap. 5. Obs. 3. and p. 100, 101, 102, 103.

2. Dativum postulant Verba composita, &c. is a Rule of great Uncertainty, and therefore true but now and then, consequently ought to have been limited, by adding Cum Præpositio verbi significationi addit suam; for otherwise conduco, to hire, obsideo, to besiege, suppono, to suppose, and a vast Number more must by this Rule require a Dative: But then that could not have been enough neither, without adding a vast Number of Exceptions, since affor, admonco, adhortor, colludo, configo, convenio, to speak with, antegredior, antevolo, obsero, impello, impugno, inco, inquiri, inspecio, invoco, irrideo, intercedo, to go between, interequito, and many other Compound Verbs must by this Rule have govern'd Datives, which in the Classics are never found so. He confesses indeed that *Pauca ex his* (meaning the Verbs compounded with the Prepositions above-mention'd) mutant Dativum in alium casum; when it will appear to any one that looks into the Matter, that most of the Verbs compounded with ad, in, inter, will change their Dative into an Accusative; those compounded of sub very often; Of those compound-

ed of præ that are reckon'd by Lily as governing an Accusative, two are wrong, namely, præco and prævinco, which last I suppose should be prævenio, and then it is right; but then there are several omitted. See p 156, 157, 158, 159. 10. Sunt quæ figurate Accusativum habent: Some Verbs have an Accusative Case by a Figure. What Use can be made of this Rule? unless he had told us what these Verbs are. See this whole Matter made out p. 159. 11. Verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi duplicem, &c. Celo is quite left out, and vestiendi should have been omitted. Neither does the Rule hold good in all the Verbs either of asking or teaching. See p. 117, 118, 119, &c. Nor is the Rule true only of them, p. 119. 12. Quodvis verbum admittit Ablativum, &c. The Prepositions serving to the Ablative Case are so very often and elegantly omitted in the Latin, that all that Lily has said, comes very far short of acquainting the Learner thoroughly, when these Prepositions may properly be omitted, and when not, as appears from Idiom. Syntax, Chap. 8. and Notes; see also Appendix. 13. Such another Rule is Prepositio subaudita interdum facit, ut addatur Ablativus from which I can may be learn just nothing. 14. Verbis quæ vim comparationis obtinent adiectum Ablativus significans mensuram excessus, That in after Verbs signifying Comparison is omitted in the Latin; but then it is as true likewise that the same is done after all Adjectives of the Comparative Degree, and Adjectives of the Positive signifying Comparison. See p. 32. R. 3. 15. Ponuntur interdum figurate & absolute verba infinita. This is a most unintelligible piece

piece of Jargon. The Infinitive is put by a Figure; whereas he should have said, not the Infinitive, but the former Verb to an Infinitive, is sometimes left out by the Figure Ellipsis. But why absolutely? when he owns, that Subauditur par est, æquum est, aut aliquid simile. See p. 38. Ell. 2. & p. 163. N. 2. & 168. N. 10. 16. Gerundia in di pendent a quibusdam tum Substantivis, tum Adjectivis; but what these Substantives and Adjectives are, the Learner is wholly to seek. See p. 16. Obs. 6. 17. Ponuntur & absque prepositione leaves the Learner to find out what Prepositions may be left out before a Gerund in dum, and which not. See p. 40. Ell. Gerundia in dum pendent ab his prepositionibus, &c. The Gerund in dum is ordinarily govern'd of the Preposition ad, and no other; but when the Gerund in dum with ad, instead of the Infinitive Mood is proper, the Scholar is absolutely to seek. See p. 15. Ch. 15. p. 38. Id. 1. In the Chapter of the Prepositions, that is, the last Chapter but one, Lily just touches upon the Elegant Use of the Prepositions, but so dismally short of the Matter, that it might e'en as well have been wholly omitted, as the Reader will see by comparing it with our Appendix.

3dly, That there are many Rules in Lily's Syntax unnecessary and superfluous, take these Instances following: 1. Ad eundem modum participia & pronomina substantivis adnectuntur. 2. Quoties nullus nominativus interfertur inter Relativum & verbum Relativum erit verbo nominativus. 3. Opus autem Adjective quandoque poni videtur, varieque construitur; the Signification of Words being the Work of a Dictionary, not of a Syntax.

9ax- 4. In alio tamen sensu ablativum, primus ab Hercule, tertius ab Ænea: *The first from Hercules, the third from Æneas; what Need of a Rule to show that from is rendered by a Preposition?* 5. In alio vero sensu Dativum nulli pietate secundus: *Second to none; where the Word none is put acquisitively, and comes under Adjectiva quibus commodum.* 6. Ipse ex pronomibus solum trium personarum significationem representat. 7. Et nominibus pariter ac pronomibus. *What Occasion can there be for a Rule, much less (wo, to show that self, ipse, may be joyn'd to all Persons?* 8. So likewise that idem, the same, may be joyn'd to any Substantives whether Nouns or Pronouns. *Are not all Adjectives so joyn'd, if Occasion require?* 9. Denique omnia fere verba post se Nominativum habent Adjectivi nominis, &c. *Which is no more than telling them over again that Adjectives must agree with their Substantives.* 10. To tell us under Omnia verba, &c. that Huic appendent regulæ verba comparandi, verba dandi, verba nuntiandi, verba promittendi ac solvendi, which have all of them the acquisitive Sign to after them either express'd or understood, and at the same Time to omit almost all those that govern a Dative without the Sign to, where only Children can be at a Loss, seems very monstrous. See Anal. Synt. Obs. 3. & p. 101, 102. 11. Datago is put into the Rule with misereor and miseresco, as if it always govern'd a Genitive; whereas indeed it governs a Genitive only of Res, but of all other Words an Ablative with de. See p. 77. N. 3. 12. Uterque, nullus, neuter, alius, ambo, & superlatus gradus non nisi in ablativo id genus verbis sub-

duntax. To say that these Words are never used in
 the Genitive after Verbs of accusing, &c. is not true,
 for Tacitus Ann. 15. says, Quia male administra-
 ra provinciae, aliorumque criminum urgebatur.
 Nay, the very Foundation upon which this Rule stands
 is false: For the Reason on which this Rule is founded
 is this, that the general Word crimen, scelus, &c.
 which is the former Substantive understood before the
 Genitive furti, adulterii, and the like, is also the
 Substantive to these Adjectives, and that the said
 general Words are never used in the Genitive, after
 these Verbs, and therefore their Adjectives never
 must; which appears to be a Mistake. Thus Justin,
 l. 9. Apud quos cum potentissimi quique rei ejus
 ipsius criminis postularentur. And the Lawyers
 usually so express themselves. Thus Marcell. l. 46.
 Pandect. Reo criminis postulato, interim prohibet
 recte pecuniam a debitoribus solvi. See more
 p. 134. This Rule might indeed have made a Mar-
 ginal Note, as if it were not so usual to find these
 Adjectives in the Genitive after Verbs of accusing,
 but ought by no Means to have been obtruded as a
 constant Rule, and that without any Authority.
 13. Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, &c.
 As many of these Verbs as have with after them,
 wanted no such Rule as this, since that Preposition is
 never express but when it signifies together with.
 14. Prosequor te amore, laude, honore, &c. This
 Rule is nothing but a Heap of Variations, which for
 their Syntax come under other Rules, and therefore
 might well have been spared here. 15. So might
 Mereon cum Adverbis; that of should be express
 by de after a Verb, could not easily have been mista-
 ken

ken turn without a Rule. But why Cum adverbis? when of it sometimes made by de after meretur, &c. without these Adverbs. Thus Plautus, De te nequere neque verbo merui ut faceres quod facis, Act. 2. 2. And Terence, Quid de te tantum meruisti? Heaut. 1. 1. 16. What Need can there be of Quædam accipiendi, distandi & auferendi verba, &c. only to show that from must be rendred, as it always is, without a Rule to the contrary, by an Ablative Case with a Preposition. But I believe it would puzzle anybody to give a Reason why quædam is added here. 17. What can be more trifling than to tell us, that the same Verb having different Signs after it, may have different Cases after it, i. e. that the same Verb may have after it at the same Time an Accusat. of the Sufferer, a Dat. put asquisitively, an Ablat. signifying the Cause, and another put absolutely, and a Vocat. of the Person spoken to; as is done in that Rule, Eidem verbo diversi casus diversæ rationis apponi possunt. 18. He has been telling in a long System of many Rules, that such and such Verbs govern such and such Cases; intimating by his Silence to the contrary, that they do so, whether they be Actives or Passives: And then adds (in Passivis additur ablativus, &c.) that when the Verb Active is turn'd into a Verb Passive, then the Nominat. to the Verb Active is turn'd into an Ablat. with a Preposition. Now after all this, what Occasion could there be to tell us once more, that Cæteri casus manent in Passivis qui fuerunt Activorum? 19. Nomina appellativa. & nomina majorum locorum adduntur fere cum prepositione, is to tell us that at, or in, or from before common Names of Places, and

Names of Countries is exprest. And can it be supposed that the Scholar would not have exprest them without this Rule, having no other that directed him to the contrary? 20. In *Dativum feruntur hæc Impersonalia*, is to tell us, that the Verbs mention'd in that Rule, being put acquisitively, will have a Dative Case, tho' they were all included in a former Rule of *Omnia verba acquisitive posita*. 21. *Quamvis in his usitator est dativus*, is such another impertinent Rule, for that also came under a Rule that went before, namely, *Quorum participia frequentius Dativis gaudent*. 22. *Exosus, perosus*, he tells us, signify Actively, and govern an Accusative Case. To tell us the Signification belongs to a Dictionary, and the Case they govern when Actives is resolv'd into the general Rule of *Verba transitiva*. 23. And the next Rule tells us, when they signify Passively they are read with a Dative, as had been told us before in *Quorum participia frequentius Dativis gaudent*. 24. *Quædam Dativum admittunt nominum unde deducta sunt*, is to tell us that some Adverbs (he might as well have said any Adverbs) if they have a casual Word after them, will have it put in the Case that their Adjective governs. And would it not be very natural for Children to do so without a Rule, the same Sign still directing the Case, if they had no Orders to the contrary? 25. *Adverbia comparativi & superlativi gradus*, is the same over again, and to the same Purpose. 26. *Sunt & hi Dativi adverbiales tempori, luci, vesperi*, besides that 'tis false (they being old Ablatives of *tempus, lux, and vesper*) is very unnecessary, because if their Dictionary furnish'd

might them with such Adverbs, they would use them no doubt; and if it did not, they would use tempore, luce, vespere, as they were directed by Quæ significant partem temporis; which would be altogether as well, if not better. 27. Plus nominativo, genitivo, &c. has no more necessary in it than to say that quam, than, after plus is sometimes left out, and the Word following put in the same Case, as if quam had been express. This would have taken in the Nominat. and Accusat. Cases; and of the Two other Cases, the Genit. comes under Adjectivum in neutro genere, and the Ablat. under Comparativa cum exponuntur per quam. See p. 141. N. 6. 28. The next Two Chapters are so full of unnecessary Rules, that I have answer'd the whole Design of them in Two Rules only. See Anat. Syntax, Obs. 1, 2. Lastly, As if this Syntax was contriv'd on purpose to be as tedious as possible, here are often Two or Three Rules given, where One would have done as well. All the Account of the Third Concord might have been reduc'd under what he calls the Second, and thence have been rendered much more intelligible. See p. 46. Verba substantiva, a long Rule, being only the Rule of mediate Apposition, might have been reduc'd to the Rule of Apposition. And since Pronouns Adjectives are still but Adjectives, and Participles are no more than Verbal Adjectives with Time, who would expect to find Adjectivum cum Substantivo made one Rule, and Ad eundem modum participia & pronomina another? When Comparatives and Superlatives govern a Genit. Case purely upon the Account of their being Partitives, what Pretence can there be for making Nomina par-

partitiva & partitive posita one Rule, and Comparativa & superlativa accepta partitive, *averther?* And since it is the same Acquisition that makes a Dat. whether it follow Nouns, or Verbs, or Participles, or Gerunds, or Supines, why must this one Acquisition be divided into as many Rules? Thus when it is express'd by a Verb it must be *Omnia verba*, by an Adjective it must be *Adjectiva quibus commodum*; by a Participle it must be *Participia regunt casus*; by a Gerund or Supine, it must be *Gerundia five gerundivæ voces & supina, &c.* and so when a Noun signifies the Cause or Manner of doing after a Verb, the Rule forsooth is, *Quodvis verbum*; after an Adjective it is *Adjectiva regunt Ablativum, or Forma vel modus.*

But then 4thly, In a Tract so full of Redundances and Superfluities, a Man would reasonably expect at least to find all Things necessary to complete a Grammarian, and that this abounding with Rules proceeded from an over Care not to omit any thing that might be useful for the complete understanding of the Latin Tongue; yet that this Syntax of Lily's is egregiously guilty of the Omission of many useful and necessary Rules, I am apt to think no Man, at least of any long Experience in the Education of Youth, will offer to deny: If any one does, I hope this following Work will abundantly convince him; wherein there are at least Four Hundred Remarks made upon the Syntax of the Latin Tongue, which Lily's Syntax takes no Notice of, many of them I confess occasion'd by his not comparing the Language out of which Children translate, I mean the English, with the Language into which they translate, that is, the Latin:

For when all's done, 'tis natural for Children even in their own Compositions, first to conceive their Thoughts in their Mother Tongue, before they express themselves in Latin. How many of these Remarks of mine may be accounted necessary or material for the full understanding of the Latin Tongue, and whether any, or how many may be reckon'd meer Curiosities, I leave to the Reader to determine; only this I am sure of, that I had no other View in this whole Work, but to lay before the Scholar such Things only as might give him a true Relish of the Latin Tongue, and make him a good Judge when Latin is such as it ought to be. And if, after all possible Care us'd, there be still wanting in this Syntax, some Things necessary or useful to this Purpose, as in so great an Undertaking I can easily suppose there may, it is to be hop'd the Instances are much fewer than in that, whose Place I would supply. There is indeed a little Syntax at the End of the Accidence, wherein the more difficult Rules of the Latin Syntax, and such as were fitter to be learn'd at a more mature Age are omitted, which I doubt not was design'd for Children at their first Entrance upon Syntax, and to answer the Uses for which our Analogical Syntax was design'd. But then first, most of the Rules there are only a Translation out of the Latin, and so have all the Faults that those Rules have. Secondly, The Method is wonderfully confused, and the Analogical and Elliptical Rules jumbled together as disorderly as in the Latin one. Thirdly, It is in some Places very tedious and impertinent: For Instance in the Case of the Relative, he reckons up all the Words he can think of, which the Relative may be govern'd of,

and

and makes them so many different Rules, and in Two Pages doing that which might have been done in Six Lines. See p. 12. Chap. 12. of our Syntax. And lastly, The Rules are sometimes very unquenchably expressed. Thus in the Chapter of the Gerunds, When, says he, ye have an English of the Participle of the Present Tense, with this Sign of or with coming after a Noun Adjective, it shall be put in the Gerund in *do*; whereas of before a Verbal *in*ing is a Sign of the Gerund in *di*, as is observ'd in the Tenses; but I suppose he meant if the Particle of may be turn'd into with, as in may after weary, glad, proud, lick, and no more. But then there is no Rule for rendering a Verbal *in*ing by a Gerund in *do* after from, with, for, about, which are Cases that happen much oftner. See Anal. Synt. Ch. 16. Part 4. And a little lower, The English of the Infinitive Mood coming after a Reason, or shewing the Cause of a Reason, may be put in the Gerund in *dum*: This perhaps was intelligible English when this Syntax was wrote; but can scarce be thought so now. If I were to examine every Rule, I should be almost as tedious in this, as I have been in the Examination of the Latin one, and therefore I shall drop it, and only say in short, That if I could have found any thing either in the Establish'd Grammar, or any other, that would have answer'd my Design, I should never have troubled myself or the World with any Undertaking of this Nature.

THE
Analogical
SYNTAX.

FITTED

To the Capacities of the
lowest Forms in

GRAMMAR SCHOOLS.

Principally design'd for the
Use of *Normich* School.

N O R W I C H :

Printed and Sold by *Fr. Collins* at the
Printing-House near the *Red-Well*,
M DCC XII.

THE CONTENTS.

- C**HAP. I. *Of the first Concord.*
Chap. II. *Of the second Concord.*
Chap. III. *The Rule of the Genitive Case.*
Chap. IV. *The Rule of Apposition.*
Chap. V. *The Rule of the Dative.*
Chap. VI. *The Rule of the Accusative.*
Chap. VII. *The Rule of the Vocative.*
Chap. VIII. *The Rule of the Ablative.*
Chap. IX. *The Rule of the Relative.*
Chap. X. *Of the Interrogative.*
Chap. XI. *Of the Possessive.*
Chap. XII. *Of the Reciprocal.*
Chap. XIII. *The Case of Verbs compounded with a Preposition.*
Chap. XIV. *Of Verbs Impersonal.*
Chap. XV. *Of To before the Verb.*
Chap. XVI. *Of the Verbal in ing.*
Chap. XVII. *Of Adverbs, Conjunctions and the Subjunctive Mood.*
Chap. XVIII. *Of Conjunctions Copulative, &c.*

C H A P. I.

*The First Concord between the Adjective
and Substantive, being*

The First Principal R U L E.

THE Adjective or Participle must be of the same Case, Gender and Number with the Substantive.

Observation 1. Two Substantives singular with the Conjunction Copulative *And* between, will have an Adjective, Relative or Participle plural, which Adjective, &c. shall agree in Gender with the more worthy Substantive.

N. B. A Substantive of the Masculine Gender is more worthy than one of the Feminine or Neuter, and one of the Feminine is more worthy than one of the Neuter in Things that have Life; but in Things without Life the Neuter is most worthy.

Obs. 2. Sometimes an Infinitive Mood, or an Adverb, or a whole Sentence stands for a Substantive to the Adjective, and then the Adjective is always put in the Neuter Gender.

N. B. This Infinitive in English sometimes stands after the Adjective, and its Place is supplied

plied by the Particle *it*, which is always omitted in the Latin; as, it is hard to kick against the Pricks, *i. e.* to kick against the Pricks is hard.

CH A P. II.

The Second Concord between the Nominative and the Verb, being

The Second Principal RULE.

THE Verb must be of the same Number and Person with the Nominative Case.

N. B. The Nominative Case and the Verb are also of the same Gender too, where the Verb is capable of a Gender, by being made up of the Participle of the Preter Tense and Sum.

N. B. Ego I always requires after it a Verb of the first Person singular, Nos We the first plural, Tu Thou the second singular, Vos Ye the second plural. But the Nominative of all other Nouns and Pronouns whatever requires the Verb following to be put in the third Person.

Obs. 1. If many Nominative Cases singular, with the Conjunction copulative *And* between, come before a Verb, that Verb is commonly of the plural Number.

N. B. A Nominative of the first Person is more worthy than one of the second or third, and one of the second more worthy than one of the third.

Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Sometimes the Infinitive Mood, or a whole Sentence supplies the place of the Nominative Case to the Verb.

Obs. 3. When you meet with the Word *You* before a Verb, consider whether one or more be spoken to, if but one, then it must never be made by *Vos*, but *Tu* with a Verb of the second Person singular.

Obs. 4. *Lo* or *Behold*, in Latin *En* or *Ecce* have commonly after them a Nominative, and some Interjections, as *Hæu*, *O*, &c.

C H A P. III.

The Rule of the Genitive Case, being

The Third Principal RULE.

THE Particle *Of* after all Substantives, except *Opus* and *Usus*, *Necesse*, as also most Adjectives, Verbs and Adverbs, is a Sign of the Genitive Case.

The Adjectives Verbs and Adverbs, after which *Of* is a Sign of the Genitive Case are as follow, *viz.*

Obs. 1. After Adjectives signifying Desire or Loathing, Knowledge or Ignorance, Guilt or Innocence, Care, Negligence or Fear.

2. After Partitives or Nouns put partitively, Interrogatives, Numerals, Comparatives and Superlatives, from which Genitive the said Partitives, Interrogatives, &c. commonly borrow their Gender.

3. After Adjectives signifying Plenty, Scarcity or Want.

4. After Adjectives of the Neuter Gender signifying Quantity, as *much, more, little, less*.

5. After Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, Acquitting, as also after *Moneo* and its Compounds.

Obs. 6. After Verbs of Esteeming.

7. After *Panitet, tadet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget*.

8. Adverbs of Quantity or Intensity, such as *parum* a little, *satis*, *abundè* enough, *et* to that pass.

Obs. 9. Sometimes in English the Word, that should stand last in Nature with *Of* before it, stands first. In that Case you must change the place of the Words by putting *Of* between, and that will reduce the Sentence to the Analogous Rule.

C H A P. IV.

Substantives put in Apposition, being

The Fourth Principal R U L E.

WHen two Substantives come immediately together in a Sentence, or have nothing between them but a Verb Passive or Neuter, or their Participles, they shall be both put in the same Case, as belonging to the same Thing.

CHAP.

C H A P. V.

The Rule of the Dative Case, being

The Fifth Principal R U L E.

Fitness,
Nearness,
Likeness. } **T**HE Particles *To* and *For*,
 signifying acquisitively, *i. e.*
 for the Sake, Use, Advantage or
 Disadvantage of the Noun fol-
 lowing, or by which there is intimated ei-
 ther Getting or Looſing, are Signs of the
 Dative Case.

Obſ. 1. So when the Particle *Of* between
 two Subſtantives can be turned into *To*, then
 the Genitive may be turned into a Dative,
 as, *He is a Husband of* or *to the City*, *Urbi*
Pater eſt.

Obſ. 2. Theſe Particles *To* and *For* are
 frequently left out in Engliſh, and muſt be
 put in to find out the Dative Caſe, as, *My*
Kinſman hath promiſed me his Favour, and hath
paid my Friend the Money which I lent him.

Obſ. 3. After ſome Verbs ſignifying Pro-
 fit or Diſprofit, the Acquisition is more ſe-
 cret, ſo that you cannot insert the Particles
To or *For*, yet the Perſon that follows muſt
 be put in the Dative Caſe; and they are
 theſe that follow, *viz.*

All Verbs ſignifying to help except *Juvo*
 and *adjuvo*; to hurt except *Ledo*; to heat
 except

except *Sano*; to resist except *Oppugno* and *Impugno*; to command except *Jubeo*; to rule except *Rego* and *Guberno*; to please or displease, rendred by *Placeo* or *Displiceo*; to take Care of, rendred by *Consulo*, *Prospicio*; to counsel or perswade, rendred by *Consulo* *Suadeo*, *Persuadeo*; to dissuade by *Dissuadeo*; to beseech, rendred by *Supplico*; to succeed by *Succedo* or *Subeo*; to satisfie by *Satisfacio*; to believe, to cost, to favour, to indulge, to backbite, to rail at, to be angry with, to threaten to pardon, to spare, to excel, to congratulate, to study, to obey or serve, to meet, to envy, to flatter.

C H A P. VI.

The Rule of the Accusative Case, being

The Sixth Principal R U L E.

IF a Noun comes after a Verb Active, without the Signs *Of*, *To* or *For*, or any Preposition, it shall be put in the Accusative Case, except it follow such Verbs as govern a Dative by the foregoing Rule.

Obs. 1. Nouns that signify Duration of Time, answering to the Question *how long*, may be put after any Verbs in the Accusative Case.

Obs. 2. Likewise Nouns that signify Distance of Place, or Dimensions of Height, Depth, Length, Breadth, Thickness. *Obs.*

Obs. 3. Verbs of Asking and Teaching, and *Celo* to conceal, have after them two Accusatives.

Obs. 4. Such Verbs as have two Accusatives in the Active Voice, retain one in the Passive.

Obs. 5. *Cedò*, give me, fetch me, shew me, reach me, tell me, has an Accusative after it as if it were a Verb.

Obs. 6. *En*, *Ecce* and *Hem*, Adverbs of shewing or upbraiding, together with some Interjections, as *Heu*, *Ah*, *Proh*, and *O* of exclaiming, have sometimes after them an Accusative Case.

CHAP. VII.

The Rule of the Vocative Case, being

The Seventh Principal RULE.

THE Vocative Case is always used to express the Person called or spoken to.

Obs. 1. Because the Second Person is the Person spoken to, therefore if *Qui* follows a Vocative Case, *Qui* will always have after it a Verb of the Second Person.

Obs. 2. The Vocative has often some Interjection before it, especially *O*.

C H A P. VIII.

The Rule of the Ablative Case, being
 The Eighth Principal RULE.

THE Ablative Case is commonly governed of some Preposition serving to the Ablative Case.

Obs. 1. Though sometimes said to be put absolute, namely when having a Participle joined with it, it makes an entire Sentence, and has no Dependance on the Words about it, as *Death approaching, Sinners are seized with Horror.*

Obs. 2. Sometimes the Participle joined with this Ablative is *Being*, which in Latin must always be omitted, as *G. d. being our Guide.*

C H A P. IX.

The Rule of the RELATIVE, being
 The Ninth Principal RULE.

Relatives, Interrogatives and Indefinites do in all things comply with the Rules foregoing, only with this Difference, that they

Qui, Quicunque, Quis, Ecquis, Nemo, Uter, Qualis, Quantum, Quotus.

they always stand before the Word of which they are governed; and therefore as often as a Nominative Case comes between them and the following Verb, so as they cannot be the Nominative Case to the Verb, they will be such Case as the Verb will have after it. Unless some other Word be further added, and then they will be such Case as the last Word will govern.

And if a Substantive be joined to them, they will make that also stand before the Word of which it is governed, as, *Whose Book have you got? How great Troubles do Mortals undergo? What Horse will you ride upon.*

CHAP. X.

The Rule of Question and Answer, being

The Tenth Principal RULE.

IF a Question be asked, the Answer, if made by a Noun, must be of the same Case with the Interrogative, or Word by which the Question is asked; if by a Verb it must be of the same Mood and Tense with the Verb that the Interrogative is governed of.

C H A P. XI.

The Rule of the POSSESSIVE, being
 The Eleventh Principal R U L E.

THE Use of the Possessive is to express the Genitive Case of the Primitive; which Possessive is always very proper where it may be had, as for *Prator Urbis*, the Mayor of the City, say *Prator Urbanus*. The same is observed in Adjectives Material, as for *Tela argenti*, say *Tela argentea*.

And so the Pronouns Primitive of *me*, of *thee*, of *us*, of *you*, of *himself*, of *themselves*, when they can be turned into *mine*, *thine*, *ours*, *yours*, &c. are rather made by the Possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, &c. than by the Primitives *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, &c.

C H A P. XII.

The Rule of the Reciprocal Sui and Suus.

The Twelfth Principal R U L E.

IF you can put *self* or *selves* to *him*, *her* or *them*; and *own* to *his*, *her* or *their*; they are commonly reciprocals, i.e. reciprocate, or have Relation to the Word that goes before the Verb, and are accordingly best

rendred into Latin, the first by *sui*, and the latter by the Possessive *suus*, as God commands us to worship him onely, i. e. himself. My Mistress desires you to come to her, i. e. herself. The Captives requested the General to spare them, i. e. themselves. God made Man for his Glory, i. e. his own, God's.

Hence One another, always reciprocating to the Case that preceeds the Verb, it is elegantly rendred by *se mutuo* or *se invicem*.

C H A P. XIII.

The Case of Verbs compounded with a Preposition, being

The Thirteenth Principal RULE.

IF the Signification of the Preposition, with which the Verb is compounded, be exprest with the Verb, the Preposition may govern the same Case in Composition, that it does in Apposition. And after Verbs compounded of *a*, *ab*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*, *inter* and *sub*, the Preposition may elegantly be repeated after the Verb.

Note. When the Preposition *con* is repeated, (as it always is when it has not a Dative) it is changed into *cum*.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the Verb Impersonal, being

The Fourteenth Principal R U L E.

SOME Verbs as well in English as in Latin are rarely found but in the third Person, and some have no Nominative Case before them, of any determinate Person, but instead of such a one take the Particle *It* before them, and are therefore called Verbs Impersonal. Such are *convenit*, it is convenient; *constat*, it is certain; *expedit*, it is expedient; *liquet*, it is clear; *licet*, it is lawful; *præstat*, it is better; *debet*, it becometh; *dedecet*, it misbecometh; *conducit*, it conduceth; *Interest*, *refert*, it concerneth.

C H A P. XV.

Of To before the Verb, being

The Fourteenth Principal R U L E.

IF two Verbs come together in a Sentence having the Particle *To*, or a Noun or Pronoun between them, the latter shall be the Infinitive Mood. But then the Noun or Pronoun shall be put in the Accusative Case. But if a Verb with *To* follow a Substantive

stantive or Adjective, it is made by a Gerund in *di*, or a Gerund in *dum* with *Ad*. After a Verb of Motion, *To* with its Verb is rendred by a Gerund in *dum* with *Ad*, or by a first Supine.

To be after an Adjective is a Sign of the latter Supine.

Obs. 1. *To* coming after a Participle or Gerund, is as much a Sign of the Infinitive Mood, as if it came after a Verb, as *He pursued me endeavouring to escape*.

Obs. 2. Because some English Verbs will not admit the Sign *To* after them, therefore if two Verbs come together in a Sentence even without the Particle *To* between them, yet the latter shall be the Infinitive Mood.

Now the Verbs that will not admit of the Sign *To* after them are *can* made by *pssum*, *will* by *volo*, *will not* by *nolo*, *had rather* by *malo*, *dare* by *audere*, *may* by *licet*, *must* by *oportet*, *let* by *sino* or *permitto*.

After *Bid* it is either expressed, or omitted, as *My Master bids us study* or *to study*.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the Infinitive Mood comes before the Verb as its Nominative; when it does so, if a Noun accompanies it, that Noun must be put in the Accusative Case, as *To be accounted rich is thought honourable* *haberi divitem honestum ducitur*.

Obs. 4. *To* after the Verb *Sum* has sometimes *About* or *Like* before it exprest or understood, and signifies Purpose or Probability,

lity, and is then a Sign of the Participle of the Future in *rus*. And sometimes can be varied by *must* or *ought*, and signifies Necessity or Duty; in that Case the Verb that follows *To*, is elegantly rendred by a Gerund in *dum* with *est*, turning the Nominative of the Verb *Sum* into a Dative.

Obs. 5. *To be* after the Verb *Sum* is a Sign of the Future in *rus*.

Obs. 6. If a Verb with *To* follow a Substantive or Adjective, and can be varied into a Verbal in *ing* with *of* before it, then it shall be made by a Gerund in *di*; if not, by a Gerund in *dum* with *Ad*.

C H A P. XVI.

Of the Verbal in ing, being

The Sixteenth Principal R U L E.

1. **A** Verbal in *ing* agreeing with a Substantive is a Participle of the Present Tense.

2. But without a Substantive, and having *a* or *the*, or an Adjective before it, it is a Substantive.

3. Without *a* or *the*, after *of*, it is a Gerund in *di*.

4. After *from*, *by*, *with*, *in*, *for*, *about* or *concerning*, as also *Of* put for *With*, it is rendred by a Gerund in *do* governed of the respective Prepositions, *a, ex, cum, in, pro, de*.

C H A P. XVII.

Of Adverbs, Conjunctions and the Subjunctive Mood, being

The Seventeenth Principal RULE.

ADverbs and Conjunctions then only require a Subjunctive Mood, when they give a Sense of Contingency or Uncertainty to the Verb, as, *Ipse licet veniat, Although he come, i. e. happen to come; Si fueris Romæ, If you be, or happen to be at Rome.*

Obs. 1. Of these Adverbs and Conjunctions, the following ones have always a Subjunctive Mood, viz. *Although*, rendered by *Si, ut, cum, licet*; *As though*, by *quasi, perrinde ac si, tanquam, tanquam si, ut si, cetero, verò*; *But or but that* after a Negative, rendered by *Quin*; *Lest or that not* by *ne*; *That or that not* by *ut*; *Whether* by *An, num, utrum*, and *ne* the Enclitick, when no Question is asked; *I wish* by *Utinam*; *So that* by *Dum, Dummodo*; *Untill* by *Dum, Quoad*.

Obs. 2. Of the rest some are always used with an Indicative, as giving no Contingency to the Verb, as *Nam me discedere flevit. Virg. Non sum Proceptor amoris. Ovid.* And some admit of either, as we say in English, *If he comes, send him to me*, in the

Indicative ; or *If he come, i. e. happen to come,*
in the Subjunctive.

C H A P. XVIII.

Of Conjunctions Copulative, being;

The Eighteenth Principal R U L E.

Conjunctions Copulative, when they come
between Verbs, joyn like Moods, Ten-
ses and Persons, between Substantives, like
Cases, between Adjectives like Cases, Gen-
ders, and Numbers, unless where the Two
Verbs coupled have different Signs, or the
Two Nouns coupled come under different
Rules.



E I N I S.

THE
Idiomatical
AND
Elliptical
SYNTAX.

FITTED
To the Capacities of those
of Higher Attainments
IN
GRAMMAR SCHOOLS.

NORWICH:
Printed by *Freeman Collins*, near the Red-
Well. M DCCXII.

THE
 Idiomatical
 AND
 Elliptical
 SYNTAX
 FITTED
 To the Capacities of those
 of Higher Attainments
 IN
 GRAMMAR SCHOOLS



Printed by Freeman Collins, near the Red-
 Well. MDCCLII. NORWICH.

C H A P. I.

*The First Concord between the Adjective
and Substantive.*

Ellip. 1. **I**F an Adjective have for its Substantive the Word *Man* or *Men*, 'tis elegant in Latin to leave out the Substantive and put the Adjective in the Masculine Gender.

Ellip. 2. If the Word *Thing* or *Things* goes along with the Adjective as its Substantive, 'tis elegant to leave out the Substantive and put the Adjective in the Neuter Gender.

Ellip. 3. If the Nouns *Part*, *Property* or *Duty*, &c. have a Pronoun or an Adjective Possessive annex'd to them in the Nominative Case before *est*, 'tis elegant to leave out the said Substantives, and put the Adjective in the Neuter Gender.

Idiom 1. If *Qui*, *that* or *which* stands between two Substantives, in reason it should agree with the former, as being repeated with that, yet according to the Usage of the Latin Tongue it may agree with the latter, as *There is a Place in the Prison, which (Place) is called a Dungeon; not onely, Est locus in Carcere, Qui (Locus) Tullianum appellatur, but also Quod,*

22 The Nominative and the Verb.

Id. 2. An Adverb in English will sometimes be elegantly translated by an Adjective in Latin agreeing with the Substantive that stands before the Verb, as *I puer atque meo citus hac subscribe Libello*, for *citò*. Hor. *Rari gladii utuntur*. Tac. *Scelus expendisse merentem Laocoonta ferunt*, for *meritò*. Virg.

C H A P. II.

The Second Concord between the Nominative Case and the Verb.

Ellip. 1. **T**HE Nominative Cases *Ego*, *Tu*, *Nos* and *Vos* are generally omitted in Latin before the Verb.

Ellip. 2. The Nominative of the third Person is also as generally left out, if it be the Words *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, or the Pronoun Primitive *that* (*illo*) standing without its Substantive. So for *he that* or *they that*, make *qui*, rather than *ille* or *illi qui*; and for *that which*, *quod* rather than *illud quod*.

Id. 1. The Infinitive Mood or a whole Sentence that comes before a Verb, as its Nominative is in English frequently expressed after the Verb, the Place of the Nominative Case being supplied by the Particle *It*, which Word has nothing made for it in Latin, as *It is not my Property to be*; *It mollifies Men's Manners*; *so have learned the Liberal Arts*; i. e. *to be is not my Property*;

to have learned the Liberal Arts mollifies Mens Manners.

Id. 2. Sometimes other Nominative Cases in English are put in the same Manner after the Verb, having their Place before the Verb supplied by the Particle *It* or *There*, which Particles are never rendred in Latin, as *There are few Men that consider. It is time to learn. It is I. It is ten Days since he went away. It is a Hundred Miles.* Which must be rendred as if it were, *Few Men are. Time is. I am. Ten Days are. A Hundred Miles are.*

Id. 3. If a Verb have one Nominative Case before it, and another after it, tho' only the former answers to the Question, *Who* or *what*, and therefore should be the Nominative Case to the Verb; yet according to the Usage of Authors, the Verb may be made to agree with either of them, as *Many Servants are accounted an Incumbrance. Virtue is the truest Riches. Thy Commandments are my Meditation.*

C H A P. III.

The Rule of the Genitive Case,

Ellip. 1. **W**HEN two Substantives come together with *Of* between, 'tis sometimes elegant to leave out the former. Especially if the former Substantive be *Part, Property* or *Duty*, coming along with

with some Tense of the Verb *Sum*, as *It is the Duty of Young-men to reverence their Elders.*

Id. 1. The Verb *Sum*, having after it a Word that expresses the Owner or Possessor of the thing mentioned before it, will require the Word after it to be put in the Genitive Case.

Id. 2. *Misereor* and *misereor*, to pity, require always a Genitive Case.

Id. 3. *Reminiscor*, *memini*, *recordor*, to remember, and *Obliviscor*, to forget, take after them either a Genitive or an Accusative.

Id. 4. *Potior*, to obtain, requires after it a Genitive sometimes, especially if *Res* follow it; but of other Nouns more frequently an Ablative.

Id. 5. For so much, how much, more, less, in Latin, *Tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*, are usually set after the Verbs, *Emo*, *vendo*, *venio*, *consto*, *valeo*; and may be set after any other Verbs where Price is signified.

Id. 6. Likewise when any of these Words *As much*, *how much*, *greatly*, *little*, *more*, come after *Interest* or *Refert*, it concerneth, though they are Adverbs in English, yet in Latin may be elegantly rendered by *Tanti*, *quanti*, *magis*, *permagis*, *parvi*.

Id. 7. The same *Interest* and *Refert* require also a Genitive of the Person concerned, if the Person be any other than *me*, *thee*, *is*, *you*, *whom*, or the Reciprocal *him* and *them*; for these ~~are~~ are to be turned into their several

veral Possessives, and made in the Ablative Case Feminine Gender, *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra* and *cujus*, only this last is found both Ways, by *cujus* and *cujus*.

Id. 8. When *at* or *in* comes before the proper Name of a Town or City of the first or second Declension and the singular Number it is to be put in the Genitive Case.

Id. 9. In Imitation of which, we find *at Home* always rendred by *Domi*, *on the Ground*, by *Humi*, *in War* by *Militie*, and *Belli* when *Domi* stands next before it.

C H A P. IV.

The Rule of Substantives put in Apposition.

Ell. 1. **W**hen the Particle *Being* comes between two Substantives, it is wholly omitted in the Latin, as *My Father being a Man, loveth me being a Child*.

Ell. 2. When *to*, *for* or *as* come between two Substantives, the said Particles may elegantly be omitted, as *Take the white Heifer for your Reward*, *Nitidam cape Præmia Vaccam*.

Id. 1. The Nominative that comes after *Sum*, if you can put *For* before it, is elegantly turned into a Dative, as *It ought to be a great Argument*, *Magno Argumento esse debet*.

Id. 2. If of the two Substantives in Apposition, the first happens to be Feminine,
D and

and the Latin Word for the latter end in *per* or *us*, it is best to make the Substantive to ending in the Feminine Gender, by turning *per* into *rix*, and *us* into *a*.

CHAPTER V.

The Rule of the Dative Case.

Id. 1. **I**T is an usual Elegance in Latin to render *have* by *Ist* or *Suppetit*, turning the Case before it into a Dative, and the Case after it into a Nominative, as *Sunt nobis mitia Poma*. Virg.

Id. 2. The Verb *Sum* having a Nominative Case after it together with a Dative, will very elegantly turn the Nominative into a Dative, and so make a double Dative.

Id. 3. By after Verbs Passive sometimes, and often after their Participles and Verbal Adjectives in *us* and *bilis*, is a Sign of the Dative instead of an Ablative with *a* or *ab*.

Id. 4. *With* after Verbs of agreeing, disagreeing or contending, and *from* after Verbs of differing or taking away are sometimes Signs of the Dative Case.

With likewise after *Accustomed* rendered by *Familiaris* or *Intimus*, is a Sign of the Dative Case.

So also *To* or *With* after *Idem*, *Coævus* and the like; and *from* after *diversus* or *varius* may be rendered by a Dative.

Id. 5.

Id. 5. If in English you find an Accusative Case together with an Ablative, and the Preposition *With*, after these Verbs *Trust*, *furnish*, *supply*, *upbraid*, *threaten*, you must in Latin turn the Accusative into a Dative, and the Ablative with a Preposition into an Accusative.

CHAP. VI.

The Rule of the Accusative Case.

Ell. 1. **A**D *To*, before proper Names of Towns and coming after Verbs of Motion, is elegantly omitted, and the Word following put in the Accusative Case. And also before the Common Names *Domus* and *Rus*.

Ell. 2. The Particles *In* or *As to* often after Verbs Passive and their Participles, sometimes after Verbs Neuter, and Adjectives are omitted in Latin, and the Word following put in the Accusative Case, by virtue of the Prepositions *Secundum* or *Quoad* *As to* understood.

Ell. 3. *At* after Verbs of rejoicing, admiring, laughing, barking, and *For* or *At*, after Verbs of sorrowing are commonly omitted, and the Word following put in the Accusative Case, as *Idolor*. *Id gaudeo*. *Id vero serio triumphat*. *Tec. Satis mirari Hominis Negligentiam negleo*. *Cic. Ille Dolum ridens*. *Virg. Cervinam Pellem lattravit*. *Hor.*

*Num id lachrymat Virgo ? Ter. Nunc Amy-
ci Casum gemit. Virg.*

Ell. 4. If the Words *some, one, those, a certain Man or Men, &c.* in Latin *Quidam* or *aliquis* follow the Verb, and come before the Relative *Qui*, as its Antecedent, the Words *some, one, &c.* are elegantly omitted, as *He sent some that should see, Præmittit qui videant. Cæf.*

Ell. 5. The Pronouns *me, thee, it, us, you, them* are elegantly omitted after the Verb, as, *Non destitit instare donec perpulit, Teren. scil. me. Incitabant præterea corrupti Civitatis Mores, Sal. de Catilina. sc. eum. Urbs antiqua fuit Tyrii tenuere Coloni, Virg. sc. eam. This is to be observed with some Caution.*

Ell. 6. *Do* after *possum* and *audeo*, *Have* after *volo, volo, malo*, are commonly omitted in Latin.

CH A P. VII.

The Rule of the Vocative Case.

Ell. 1. **S**ometimes the Nominative is used instead of the Vocative in Imitation of the Greeks, as *Adsis Letitia Balthus Dator. Virg. Æn. 1. O Vir fortis atque amicus. Ter. Phorm. 2. 2.* to which if you add in the Beginning, *in qui es*, the Ellipsis is made out. And in the Word *Macte* the Vocative for the Nominative, as *Macte virtute esto.*

C H A P. VIII.

The Rule of the Ablative Case.

Ell. 1. **A**fter before *Manner* or *Way* is a Sign of the Ablative Case.

Ell. 2. *Along* is an English Preposition and is commonly omitted in Latin.

Ell. 3. *At* before *Will* or *Pleasure*, *Time* or *Occasion*, *Price*, *Expence*, *Instrument*, *Cause*, *Games*, or before Proper Names of Towns or Cities of the Third Declension or plural Number, is a Sign of the Ablative Case.

Ell. 4. The Preposition *BY* is very often omitted, and the Word following put in the Ablative Case. And that is

1. When *BY* signifies the *Cause* or *Means* whereby, or the *Manner* how an Action is done, or a Thing brought to pass.

2. When *BY* signifies the *Manner* how a Thing is so or so called, and is found commonly before the Words *Original*, *Descent*, *Country*, *Name*, *Nature*, &c.

3. Before *Way*, which is commonly understood in both Idioms.

4. After *sto* and *maneo*.

5. After Verbs of taking hold or hanging.

6. After Verbs of Motion, before proper Names of Places, and before some common Names, as *Land*, *Sea*.

7. Be

7. Before *Day* and *Night*, which *By* in English is turned into *A*.

8. *By* after a Comparative Degree, as *He is taller than you by the Head*. This *By* after a Comparative is sometimes understood as well in English as in Latin, namely when the Word of Excess stands before the Comparative, as *He is a Head taller than you*. As it is also before *so much, how much, much, somewhat, little, never* put for *nothing*. Nay sometimes the Ablative it self in this Case is omitted in English together with the Preposition *By*, and is compensated by the Particle *The*, as *The thicker, the stronger. The deeper, the sweeter*.

So when *As* with *again* is in English joyned to an Adjective of the Positive Degree, as when we say *As good again, or twice as good, twice as big*, and the like, it is an Idiom, and in rendring it into Latin is elegantly turned into a Comparative Degree with *By double*, as *Bigger by double, i. e. as big again, Duplo major. As good again, Duplo melior*.

ELL 5. The Preposition *FOR* is often omitted in Latin, and the Word following put in the Ablative Case.

1. Before a Noun signifying the Cause, as *He dares not speak for Fear of Envy*.

2. Before a Noun signifying Price, Reward, Wager or Bet.

3. After *Aut*.

4. Be-

4. Before Time as *Protagoras Sophistes temporibus illis vel maximis.* Cic.

5. After an Adjective with *too* before it. as *Nothing is too powerful for Gold.* *Majoraque viribus audes.* Virg. *Invidia major.* Hor.

Ell. 6. *From, or Out of,* after a Verb of Motion, before the proper Name of a Place, or the Common Names Home and Country rendered by *Domus* and *Rus* is a Sign of the Ablative Case.

Ell. 7. The preposition *IN* is frequently left out in Latin, and that when it Signifies the *Manner of doing or being,* which it does in these instances following. viz:

1. Before these Nouns *Deed, Name, Order, Respect, Opinion, Shape, Likeness, Turn, Number, Stead.*

2. After Verbs Participles or Adjectives signifying with respect to some part of the *Body, or Mind, or some Quality, or Circumstance* eminently inherent in the Person, as *Genere insignis, virtutis Nobiles, lingua hesitantes, voce absoni, Vultu, motuque Corporis vasti & agrestes.* Cic.

3. When it expresses the *Manner how a thing may be so or so call'd,* as *Consanguinitate propinquus.* Virg. *Omni Doctrina perfectissimus. Aetate & pietate filius, Beneficio parens, amore frater.* Cic.

4. After Verbs of abounding, and Adjectives Signifying plenty or want.

5. After any Noun or Verb, wherein is

signified *Comparison* of one thing with another, as after *Like* or *Unlike* or any *Adjective* of the *Comparative Degree*; or after any *Verbs* signifying *To equal*, *excell*, *agree*, *disagree*, *differ*.

2. *I N* is commonly left out after the *Verb Sum*. as *Qui aliquo sunt Numero atque Honore. Cæſ.*

3. After *Verbs* of instructing, as also *Glorior*, *I glory*, *gaudeo*, *lætor*, *I delight* or *rejoyce*.

4. Before a *Word Of price*, after the *Verb Sto* or *Conſto* to *stand*, in which *Case* *Stand* signifies as much as *Cost*. as *Tantulo Impendio ea Victoria ſtetit. Curt.* *In ſo little Charge did the Victory ſtand him.*

5. Before *Time* which is in *English* ſometimes turned into *On* or *Upon*, and ſometimes underſtood.

6. Laſtly before the proper *Name* of a *Town* of the *Third Declenſion* or *Plural Number*, and before the *Common Names* *Rus*, *Domus* or *Locus*.

ELL. 8. The *Prepoſition O F* is elegantly omitted in *Latin*, and the *Word* following put in the *Ablative*: in theſe following *Cases*.

1. After *Verbs* of *unloading*, *easing*, *depriving*, *disappointing*.

2. After *Verbs* of *acquitting*, *condemning*.

3. After *Born*, *Sprung*, *Egot*, *Live*, *Conſiſt*, *Become*.

4. After

4. *Q F* is omitted after Verbs or Adjectives signifying *Gladness* or *Pride*.

5. Before a Disease, after Verbs of *Dying*, or Adjectives and Verbs signifying *Sickness*.

6. Before a Word signifying the Description of a thing.

7. Signifying the Matter of which a Thing is made, as *Aere cavo Clypeus*. Virg.

8. After *Opus* and *Usus* Need.

9. Before *Will* or *Accord*.

10. After *worthy*, *unworthy*, *dear*, *cheap*.

11. When it can be varied by *In* after Adjectives signifying some Quality inherent in some particular Part, as *Swift of Foot*.

12. After Adjectives signifying *Fulness* or *Emptiness*.

Ell. 9. *O N* or *Upon* is frequently understood in Latin, and the Word following put in the Ablative Case.

1. After Verbs of *feeding* or *living*, before any sort of *Meat* or *Food*.

2. Before Place after Verbs signifying *Rest* or *Continuance*, as *Ipse jugis Cynthi graditur*. Virg. *gramineoq; viros locat ipse sedili*. Id.

3. After Verbs signifying *to hang*, and after *nitor*, *to lean* or *depend*, and *fretus*, *relying* or *depending*.

4. Before a Musical Instrument.

5. Before *Hand* or *Side* with *right* or *left*.

6. Before *Time* or *Occasion*.

7. Before *Account*, *Condition* or *Terms*.

Ell. 10. *Over* with *all* is an English Preposition

tion, commonly expressed in Latin by an an Accusative with *per*, but sometimes omitted, and the Word following put in the Ablative, as *Totum Oppido exanimatum querere*. Ter. *All the Town over*.

Ell. 11. *Than* after a Comparative Degree is an English Preposition, and a Sign of the Ablative Case.

Ell. 12. *With* is commonly left out in all Cases, except where it denotes Company, and is as much as *together with*.

EN. 13. *Within* before Time is sometimes a Sign of the Ablative, as *Nam ipsum tribus his proximis Annis Adeptione in Regnum pervenisse*. Sal. *Clodius respondit triduo illum, ad summum quatruiduo, periturum*. Cic.

Id. 1. Some Verbs will have an Ablative in Latin, tho' there be no Preposition expressed either in the English or Latin, and they are these that follow. viz. *Fungor, defungor, fruor, utor, abutor, dignor, supersedeo, potior, careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, communico, and participo, to make Partaker*.

before

Id. 2. *By* or *At* after a Verbal in *ing* is elegantly rendred by the Ablative absolute, as *Pulso Tympani concita Tympano*, Hor. *By beating a Drum*. *Plurima Cultores versis Animalis Glebis Inveniunt*, Ovid. *By turning*.

Id. 2. When *Having* comes before a Participle of the Preter Tense, and you have no Verb Active Deponent in Latin to express it by, 'tis elegant to put the Noun that

fol-

The Relative and Interrogative. 35

follows the Participle in the Ablative, and make the Participle agree with it: as *Cæsar having received Pledges returned into France, Cæsar acceptis Obsidibus rediit in Galliam. Cæs.*

Id. 4. The Particles *If, when, since, after that, although*, coming before a Noun and a Verb, are sometimes elegantly left out, and the Noun is turned into an Ablative absolute, and the Verb into a Participle agreeing with it: as *Vilius hac nobis alio mittente suisset. Mart. If another had sent it.*

C H A P. IX.

The RELATIVE.

Ell. 1. **T**HE Relative is often understood in English, namely when the Sentence is defective for want of a Nominative to the Verb, or of some other Case to follow to be governed of the Verb, Adverb or Preposition that ends the Sentence; but must be expressed in the Latin: as *This is the Book I lost. This is the Ship I sailed in.*

C H A P. X.

The INTERROGATIVE.

Id. 1. **S**OMETIMES a Question is ask'd without a Pronoun Interrogative, and by the Verb only, in that Case 'tis usual in Latin to put the Interrogative Conjunctions *an, num, numquam* before the Sentence, and sometimes to joyn the Enclitick *ne* to the first Word of the Sentence. CHAP.

C H A P. XI.

The POSSESSIVE.

Id. 1. **O**F mine of thine, of his, of ours, of yours, of theirs must be rendred by *meus, utus, suus, noster, vester*. as a Friend of ours, *Amicus noster*. A Neighbor of yours, *Vicinus tuus*.

C H A P. XII.

The RECIPROCALLS.

Id. 1. **T**HERE is one Case where *own* may be added to *his, her* or *their*, which yet may not be rendred by *suus*, but *ejus* or *illorum*, and that is where there is a Noun of the third Person before the Verb and another after it, which is immediately followed by a Preposition, with *his own* or *her own*, &c. as *Titius* saw *Mavius* before *his own Door*; in English may signifie either *Titius's Door* or *Mavius's Door*: in this Case the Latins distinguish, tho' the English do not: as *Titius vidit Mavius ante fores suas*, when 'tis meant the Nominative *Titius's Door*; and *fores ejus*, when 'tis meant the Accusative *Mavius's Door*.

Id. 2. Grammarians observe that the Conjunction Copulative *Et* cuts off all Reciprocation; so that tho' we may say *Cepi lupam cum catulis suis*: yet we may not say *Cepi lupam & catulos suos*, but rather *ejus*.

C H A P. VIII.

Of Verbs compounded with a Preposition.

Id. 1. **V**ERBS compounded with the Prepositions *ad, con, circum, in, inter* and *super* not only govern the Case of their Preposition, but some of them a Dative instead of it; *ante, ob, sub* and *præ* in Composition commonly govern a Dative, *contra* and *post* always. The Verb *sum* compounded of any Preposition whatever may have a Dative.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the Verb Impersonal.

Id. 1. **S**OME Verbs Impersonal have in the Latin Tongue such a Propriety in them, that whaeuer Person the Nom: is of, the Verb must be of the third Person singular, and the Nominative Case turned into such Case as the Verb will have after it. Such are these that follow, *viz. lubet, libet, placet*, I please,; *licet* I may, *conuenit* I agree, *subolet* I perceive, *stat* I am resolved, *vacat* I am at leisure, *accidit, evenit, contingit*, I happen, *dolet* I am grived, *nunciatum est, dictum est, narratum est* I am told, *persuasum est* I am persuaded, *satisfit* I am satisfied; all which turn the Nominative in English into a Dative in Latin. *Iuvat* I delight, *oportet* I must. *pœnitent* I repent, *miseret, miserescit* I pity, *pudet* I am ashamed, *piget* I am grieved, *tædet* I am weary; all these turn their English Nominative into a Latin Accusative.

Id.

Id. 2. A Verb Neuter often and sometimes a Verb Active may be turned into a Passive Impersonal by turning the Nominative into an Ablative with *à* or *àb*, as *Vivitur à me*, for *vivo*; *vivitur à te*, for *vivis*. &c.

Id. 3. If any of these Verbs *Cæpit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *debet*, *solet* and *poteſt* come before any of the Impersonals before-mentioned they also vary their Nominative after the same Manner, *viz.* into such Case as the Impersonal requires to which they are joyned, as *I began to be weary*, *Cæpit taderere me*. *You began to be weary*, *Cæpit taderere te*.

C H A P. XV.

Of To before the Verb.

ELL. 1. Sometimes the Particle *How* is found in English between two Verbs, namely when an Infinitive Mood follows Verbs of knowing, in which Case *How* is always omitted in Latin.

ELL. 2. The Infinitive Mood is often used for the Preterimperfect Tense of the Indicative, by virtue of *cæpit*, *solet*, &c. understood.

Id. 1. *To* signifying the End or Design of the foregoing Action, is commonly made by a Gerund in *dum* with *Ad*. This *To* with its Verb is sometimes turned into a Verbal in *ing*, as *Hang it a drying*. *Set it a sunning*. *We go a hunting*. as also after Verbs of applying, inviting, calling, provoking. *To be* signifying the End, is commonly varied into a Subjunctive Mood with *that* and rendred accordingly by *ut*.

Id. 2. When a Verb of the Infinitive Mood in English may be varied by a Finite Mood with *that*, *when*, *if* or *because*, it will then be respectively rendred by *ut*, *cum*, *ſi*, *quòd*, with ſuch Mood as thoſe Particles require, as *Apollo was ſo angry with Marſyas as to ſea him alive*

alive, i. e. that he did *flea*. I cannot but laugh to think how foolishly you have acted, i. e. when or as often as I think. You would say I were a Fool to trust him who hath deceived me so often, i. e. if I should trust. 'Tis ill done of you to neglect your Friends, i. e. that or because you neglect them.

Id. 3. When *TO* with its Verb, coming after a Substantive, may be varied by a Potential Mood with *Qui*, it is elegantly so rendred, as *I have not a Bed to lye in*, i. e. in which I may lye. The same is done when *To* can be varied into *For* with a Verbal in ing, as *You are a mad Man to trust him*, i. e. for trusting him,

Id. 4. *To* with its Verb after *what, whom, which*, is elegantly rendred by a Potential Mood, as *I know not what to do*. *Quò me veram nescio*. Ter.

Id. 5. *To* or *to be* with its Verb, after Adjectives noting *Worthiness, Fitness* or their Contraries, is commonly rendred by a Potential Mood with *Qui*, as *Nihil est hac Ibaide tua dignius quod ametur*. Ter.

Id. 6. *To* with its Verb coming after an Adjective or Adverb, that has the Particle *too* before it, must be rendred by a Subjunctive Mood with *quam* and *ut*, as *He is too honest to injure his Friend*.

Id. 7. *To* before a Verb after the Substantives *Fear* or *Danger* is made by a Subjunctive Mood with *ne*, as *The City is in Danger to be taken*.

Id. 8. Whenever *To* with its Verb is to be rendred by a Gerund in *di*, or a Gerund in *dum* with *ad*, and a Casual Word follows; it is elegant to turn the Gerund into a Participial in *du* agreeing with the Casual Word that follows it, and the Casual Word into the Case of Gerund, i. e. a Genit. after a Gerund in *di*, and an Accusat. after a Gerund in *dum* with *ad*.

CHAP. XVI. Of the Verbal in ing.

Id. 1. IF a Verbal in ing follow some Tense of the Verb *Sum*; as *He is reading*. I have been walking, &c. such Verbal in ing must not be rendred by a Participle of the Present Tense and *Sum*, as *Ille est legens*. *Ego fui ambulans*. But by a Verb Active, as *Ille legit*, *Ego ambulavi*.

Id.

Id. 2. Sometimes a Verbal in *ing* is found after Verbs of leaving, forbearing, neglecting, persevering, refusing, which as often as it happens is never rendred by a Participle of the Present Tense, but by an Infinitive Mood, as *Let them leave off railing, Desinant maledicere.* Ter.

Ell. 1. *By* and *With* are always omitted before the Gerund in *do*, and so is *In* sometimes, as *alitur vitium, crescitq; regendo.* Virg. *Ira fit ut distrabatur deliberando animus.* Cic. *That the Mind in deliberating is distracted.*

CHAP. XVII. Of the Subjunctive Mood.

Id. 1. **T**HE Subjunctive Mood is in Latin often used instead of the Imperative, as *hos tu vel fugias, vel si satis oris habebis, Oedipodas facino Telegonosque voces.* Ovid. by virtue of *Fac ut.*

CHAP. XVII. Of Conjunctions Copulative.

Id. 1. **I**F two Substantives with the Conjunction Copulative *And* between follow the Adj. *communis* or the Verb *conuenit*, *And* must then be rendred by *Cum* with an Ablative, not *Et*, as *It is common to me and him. Communis mihi est cum illo.* Cic. not *Et illi. Conuenit mihi cum Adversariis matrem esse interfectam.* Id.

Id. 2. The Copulative Encliticks *que, ne, ve,* are never joyned to the first of the two Words coupled, but always to the last, as *vivit valetque*, never *vivit-que valet*. unless they be joyned to both as *Hominum-que Deorumque.*

Id. 3. When *And* comes between two Sentences, whereof the first is made up of the Word *one* twice repeated, and the latter of the Word *another* twice repeated, the first Sentence must accordingly be rendred by *alius* and *alter* twice repeated in their proper Cases, leaving out the Copulative *And*, together with the following Sentence, as *One has one Vice, and another another Vice. Alii aliud vitii est.* Ter.

Id. 4. When *And* comes between two Verbs Active, there may be an elegant Translation of them, by turning the former Verb with *And* into a Participle of the preter Tense, as for *Verberibus cedam te, & in Pistrinam dedam*, say *Verberibus cæsum t ein Pistrinum dedam.* Ter.

FINIS.



THE
Critical Syntax:

O R,

NOTES

UPON THE

Analogical,
Idiomatical, and } SYNTAX.
Elliptical, }

WITH AN

APPENDIX

Of the elegant Use of the

PREPOSITIONS.

*Quò minus sunt ferendi qui Artē Grammaticam
ut tenuem ac jejuniam cavillantur; quæ nisi Oratori futuro
Fundamenta fideliter jeceris, quicquid superstruxeris cor-
ruet: Necessaria Pueris, jucunda Senibus, dulcis secreto-
rum Comes; & quæ vel sola omni Studiorum genere plus
habet Operis quam Ostentationis. Quia Interiora velut Sacri-
bus adeuntibus apparebit multa rerum Subtilitas, quæ non
modo acuerē Ingenia Puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoq;
Eruditionem ac Scientiam possit. Quint. lib. 1. cap. 3.*

NORWICH:

Printed by Free, Collins, in the Year, 1713.

NOTES on Chap. I.

THE Agreement of the Ad-Principal
jective with its Substantive is Rule.
often disturbed by the Figure Note 1.
Synthesis, whereby a Sentence

is agreeable to Sense tho' not to strict Grammar. And this is found in Authors:

1. When Regard is had, not to the Name exprest, but to the Thing, of which it is the Name. (a)

2. When a Person is exprest figuratively by some eminent Quality inherent in him or her. (b)

3. When the Plural Number is used for the Singular. (c)

4. When the Singular Number is used for the Plural, as in the Case of a Noun of Multitude. (d)

5. When the Adjective agrees not with its proper Substantive, but with the Word *Res* or *πραγμα* understood. (e)

6. When the Adjective is put in the Neuter Gender, and the Substantive, with which it should agree, is turned into a Genitive Case, as is often found, when the Adjectives, *what, whatsoever, this, that, another* are joined to a Substantive. (f)

(a) **C**entauro in magna, *Virg. Aen. 5. sc. navi.*
Nunc meis vocata sacris nocturnum Sidus
veni, *Sen. Med. sc. Luna.* Salve vera Jovis pro-
les

les decus addite Divis, *Virg. Æn. 8.* sc. Hercules
 Daret at catenis fatale monstrum, quæ genero-
 sius perire quærens, *Hor. l. 1. Od. 37.* sc. Cleopa-
 tra. Scortum nequis Proscenio sedeat, *Plaut. Pæn. Prol.*

(b) Scelus postquam ludificatus est Virginem,
Ter. Eun. 4. 3. Ubi illic scelus est qui me perdidit,
Id. Andr. 3. 5. Illum Dii Deæ; perdant senium,
Id. Eun. 1. 3.

(c) Ableate nobis, *Ter. Eun. 4. 3.* Nobis præ-
 sente, *Plaut. Amphit. 2. 2.* Nostros vidisti flentis
 ocellos, *Ovid.* Illa meum rudibus succendit pe-
 ctora flammis, *Buchan. Desid. Luter.*

(d) Clamor inde populi mirantium quid rei
 esset, *Liv. l. 1.* Si se audiant domum quemque
 inde abituros, *Id. ibid.*

Note here, that the Adjectives Plural that are join'd to Nouns of Multitude, take no more their Gender, than they do their Number, from the Noun of Multitude, but commonly from some Genitive Case express'd or understood; as pars meriti tenere ratem, meriti because of hominum understood. There is one Instance in Virgil where the Adjective Singular to a Noun of Multitude takes its Gender from the Genitive understood, Æn. 7. Pars arduus altis Pulverulen- tus equis furit, i. e. pars virorum.

Note secondly, that even when a Noun of Multi- strued with tude has a Verb Plural, yet the Adjective that is con- Nouns of strued with that Noun is Singular, though all those Mult. sing. Adjectives that follow are Plural, as Invalidus quil- tho the Verb que obtriti, Tacit. Tardi subeant Tegæa juven- be plural. tus, Stat. Hic genus antiquum terræ Titania proles Fulmine dejecti fundo volvuntur (in imo, Virg. Æn. 6. ἐχλῶ ἄτῳ ὁ μὴ γινώσκων ὁ νόμος ἐμὴ δ' ἀπόλοι εἶσι Jof. 7. 49.

Sometimes Note thirdly, that sometimes when the Verb is Sin- Plur. when gular after a Noun of Multitude, the Adjective or the Verb is Participle that follows is Plural, Furit impia Ple- Singular. bes Sontibus accensa stimulis, Statius Theb. 5.

(e) Triste lupus stabulis, *Virg. Eclog. 2.* Civium audacia turbidum. *Tac.* Innocentia quod in rebus humanis summum est, *Plin.* Varium & mutabile semper *Femina Vleg. Aen. 4.*

(f) Quid hoc morbi est, *Ter. Eup. 2. 1.* Tu mihi das quodcunque hoc Regni, *Virg. Aen. 1.* Non videmus id mantica quod in Teigo est, *Catull.* Ego istuc ætatis non amor operam dabam, *Ter. Heaut. 1. 1.* Universis idem lucis colorisque largitur, *Plin.* Quodcunque militum contrahere poteritis contrahatis, *Cic. ad Att. 8.* Huic aliud mercedis erit, *Virg. Eclog. 6.*

Of these Quid and its Compounds are never allowed Quid takes so do otherwise, as Quid mulieris uxorem habes, always a *Ter. Hec. 4. 4.* Quicquid præterea navium longarum habebat, &c. *Cæs. B. G. 1. 4.*

And this is done even though the Verb est come between these Adjectives and their Substantives, as est comes Quid esset Iux voluntatis ostenderet, *Cæs. B. G. 1. 2.* for quæ esset sua voluntas. Id quoque morum Tiberii fuit, *Tac.* for ii mores fuerunt.

When Id is left out, as being sufficiently express by Quod has his Relative Quod, then Quod will take the Genitive a Gen. when in its stead, as Quod boni datur fructus dum ille, id is left *Ter. Heaut. 2. 3.* for eo bono or id boni. Tam out. navium quod ubique fuerat unum in locum coegerant, *Cæs. B. G. 1. 2.*

This turning the Adjective into the Neuter Gender, This only and the Substantive to it into the Genitive Case is ne- in the Nom, ver found but when the Adjective is of the Nomina- and Accusative or Accusative Case Singular. Except in these Phrases following, Eo loci, *Valer. Eodem loci, Tacit. 1. 4.* Quo locorum, *Hor. 1. 2. Od. 38.* Paulo pecuniæ conducti, *Erasm. Coll.*

It is observable, that the Latines not Note 2. only joyn an Adjective to a Substantive, Substant. but sometimes also a Substantive to a for Adject. Substantive to supply the Place of an Ad.

Adjek. for Substant. Adjective. (a) And sometimes an Adjective to an Adjective, provided it be of the Neuter Gender, to supply the Place of a Substantive. (b)

(a) Regina sacerdos, Bellator Deus, Raptor lupi, *Virgil.* Vigil aurora, *Ovid.* Princeps limus, *Hor.* Servum hominem, *Ter.*

(b) Magnum per inane, *Virg.* Pessimus publico. *Liv.* 4. 4. Generoso honesto, *Perf.* Optimum publicum, *Aul. Gell.* vide plura *A. Gell.* 1. 1. c. 7. l. 10. c. 24. and 1. 7. 3.

Note 3. The Agreement of *Qui* with its repeated Substantive is much more intelligible to Children, than its Agreement with the Antecedent Substantive; because, besides avoiding the Trouble of Learning three Concords where there need to be but two, it prevents the Difficulty of the Relative and its Substantive often differing in Case, which is a great Amusement to young Beginners, who yet must have the Trouble of repeating the Substantive in order to find out the true Antecedent. And it is very usual in *Au-*

thors to find the repeated Substantive exprest with the Relative, particularly in *Cesar*,
As Ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani confederant, B. G. l. 1. par. 49. and again par. 18. Diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes convenient.

Note 4. But that which is most remarkably Idiomatical in this Case to the *Latins* is, that sometimes instead of leaving out the repeated

repeated Substantive as is usual, they leave out the Antecedent Substantive and express the repeated one; as *The Letters* which you sent me were pleasant; the Romans not only say, *Litteras quas ad me dedisti fuerunt jucundae*; leaving out the repeated Substantive *Litteras*, which is the usual way, but also, *quas ad me dedisti litteras fuerunt jucundae*; leaving out the Antecedent *Littera*. So Tully. (a)

(a) *Urbem quam statuo vestra est, Virg. Æn. 1. Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas, Ter. And. Prol. An Comedias quas faciet de integro laudendæ an exigendæ sint vobis prius, Id. ibid. Quas putas esse has non sunt veræ nuptiæ, Id. And. 1. 1. for hæc non sunt veræ nuptiæ. Eunuchum quem dedisti nobis quas turbas dedit, Id. And. 4. 3. Neutratem quem invenire volui in avi non erat. Plaut. Amph. 4. 1.*

Cum between two Substantives instead of *Et* will make the Adjective Plural among the Poets, as

Fors eadem Ismarios Hebrum cum Strimone

When many Substantives being things without Life, have an Adjective Plural, that Adjective may elegantly agree with the Substantive that stands nearest it, as

Notum sit omni provincie, tibi omnium salu- em, liberor, famam, fortunæ esse charissimas, &c.

Or else be put in the Nouter Gender, as

Divitiæ, decus, gloria in oculis sita sunt, Id.

and even if none of the Substantives be

neuter, as

Ira & Aegritudo permixta sunt, Id.

Tacitus

Tacitus has us'd an Adjective singular thus,
Everisio rei familiaris dignitatem & famam
proceps agebat, Ann. l. 6.

And sometimes we find it so though
 the Substantives be animate, as

Quod dum Patres & Plebem invalida & iner-
mia cunctatione ficta ludificetur, Id. Ann. l. 1.

In *Cic. de nat. deor.* we find the Adje-
 ctive, even in things without Life, agree-
 ing with the former, and that a Feminine.

Quid de vitibus olivetisque dicam? quarum
uberrimi fructus, &c.

This Passage of *Livy* seems yet more
 Ungrammatical;

Latium Capuaque agro multati.
 but here the Places are put for the People.

Note 3.

Sometimes two Adjectives with a Con-
 junction Copulative between have such a
 distinguishing Power, as to make their
 Substantive Plural tho' they are Singular.

Quum Pyrrhus unam atque alteram pugna
prosperè pugnasset, A. Gell. l. 3. c. 8.

On *Ellip. l.*

There are other Substantives omitted
 after an Adjective, besides the Word *Mam*
 as being thought by Authors sufficiently
 exprest by their Adjective only;

As *equus* in *Virgil* after *serius*, *inque fer-*
curvis compagibus alvum Contorsit, En. l. 2.
Antiquum obtines, Ter. And. act. 6. sc. morem
Civica donari, se. corona. Lavari calida & fr-
gida, se. aqua. Primas habere, se. partes.

Note 1.

On *Ell. l. 2.*

The Adjective is also used in the Neu-
 ter Gender, and the Substantive elegant-
 ly omitted in Imitation of the Greek

when

when the Word *Part* or *Mé* is the Substantive to the Adjective, as

Noctis extremo, A. Gell. *Asperimo hyemis*, Tac. *Obscuro diei*, Id. *Plerumque noctis*, Sal. Jug. c. 98. *Ardui sublimis montis*, Sen. Troas, Act. 5.

The same is observable in Authors, *Note 2.*
when the Word *Locus* is understood, as

Pergami in occultis ac remotis templi tympana sonuerunt, Cæs. B. C. l. 3. *Ut tu illos ex occulto caderes*, Ter. Eun. 4. 7. *Talis opaca legens nemorum Cadmeius heros*, Stat. Theb. 1. *Gentem esse aiunt apud extrema India*, A. Gell. l. 9. c. 4.

Authors go so far in putting an Ad- *On Id. 2.*
jective for an Adverb, as to use *nullus* for *non*, *matutinus* for *mane*, and *nocturnus* for *noctu*, as

Memini tamen si nullus moneas, Ter. Eun. 2. 1. *Nec minus Æneas se matutinus agebas*, Vir. Æn. 8. *Nec lupus insidiis explorat ovilia circum, Nec gregibus nocturnus obambulat*, Id. Geor. l. 3.

An Adjective of the Neuter Gender is often used for an Adverb, but then it is an Hellenisme; as

Lucidum fulgentes oculos, Hor. l. 2. Od. 12. *Horrendum stridens*, Virg. Æn. 6. *Immane quantum discrepat*, Hor. l. 1. Od. 27. *Ut altum dormires*, Juv. Sat. 1. *Transversa tuentibus hircis*, Virg. Eclog. 3. *Et pede terram crebra feris*, Id. Geo. 3.

NOTES on Chap. II.

THIS Rule of the Agreement between the Nominative and the Verb seems to fail in the Case of a Noun

Princ. Rule

G. of

of Multitude, which tho' singular may have a Verb Plural, by the Figure Synthesis or Syllepsis, whereby a Sentence is *Congrua sensu non voce*, because in that Case the Noun though Singular has a Signification Plural, such as a Company, a Part of many, both, the People, the Fourth, &c. (a).

(a) The Nouns of Multitude that are less remarkable are,

1. *Quisque*, every one, as *Pro se quisque scelus regum ac vim queruntur*, Liv. l. 1. *Omnes meretrices, ubiqueque habitant, invenit*, Plaut. Pæn. Erol. *Pro se quisque precari capere*, Curt. l. 3.

It has remarkably in *Virgil* at once both a Verb Singular and Plural, *In praelia cogit Quisque suos, varisque acunt rumoribus iras*, Æn. 9. v. 463.

2. In which Manner *Plebes* is found in *Statius*. Theb. v. 488. *Fremit impia plebes, facinusque repossunt*.

3. *Quid* with a Genitive Plural, as *Quid illic hominum ligant*, Ter. And. 4. 5. for *qui homines*.

4. *Aliquis*, *Uter*, and *Neuter*, if *Nostrium* or *Vestrum* follow exprest or understood, as *Aperite atque Erotium aliquis evocate ante ostium*. Plaut. Men. 4. 2. *Uter meruistis culpam*, Plaut. ibid. 5. 2. *Quoties tandem edixi tibi, ut caveres, neuter ad me iretis cum querimonia*, Id. ibid.

5. *Alter* and *Alius* twice repeated, as *Alter alterum nec opinatò viderimus*. Cic. *Alius alium spectantes expectatis*. Salust.

Note 2.

However the Verb Plural after a Noun of Multitude is determined as to its Person, not by the Noun of Multitude, but by the Genitive understood; as *Quisque suos patimur manes*, Virg. Æn. 6. i. e. *quisque nostrum*.

But

But after all it is better for the Scholar, to have regard to strict Concord, making a Verb singular after a Nominative singular, tho' a Noun of Multitude; and more safe too, since some of these Nouns, as *Cumulus*, *Pecus*, *Grege*, *Arena*, *Agmen*, *Exercitus*, and others, are not found in Authors with a Verb Plural.

Note 3.

If *and* between two Nominatives be turned into *with*, the Verb is sometimes found in the Plural Number among the Poets; as *divellimur inde Iphitus & Pelias mecum*, Virg. *Æn.* 2.

Note 1.
on Obs. 1.

Sometimes two or more Nominatives with *and* between, take a Verb singular, agreeing with the last Nominative, and understood to the former by the Figure *Zeugma*; as *Tum aras viresque, tum avita quoque gloria animum stimularat*, Liv. 1. 1. *Ego & Cicero meum flagitabit*. ad Att. 1. 4. Ep. 17.

Note 2.

If *nisi* couple two Nominative Cases the Verb shall commonly agree with the former; as *Talem nisi tu nulla pareret filiam*. Ter. Heaut. 5. 3.

Note 3.

But sometimes with the latter among the Poets; as *Quid nisi secreta laserunt Phyllida sylva?* Ovid. *Quid enim nisi vota supersunt?* Id.

It is an usual Elegance in *Salust*, to put an Infinitive Mood for a Nominative, and then by a *Pleonasm* to clap in the

on Obs. 2.

Pronoun *that* (*Id*) between the Infinitive, and the following Verb; as *Quasi injuriam facere id demum esset imperio uti*,
 1. 1. *Idem velle atque idem nolle ea demum est firma amicitia*. 1. 2.

on Obs. 3. We find *vos* indeed amongst the Moderns sometimes applied to a single Person, *honoris gratia*, but that was altogether unknown to the Antients. And whereas we find in *Virgil* *Æn.* 9. *Vos O Calliope precor aspirate canenti*; the Poet indeed names only *Calliope*, but directs his Discourse to all the Muses. On the contrary, if you find *We* spoken of a single Person, it may be made notwithstanding by *nos* with a Verb plural. Examples abound.

on Obs. 4. There is indeed an *Ellipsis* in this Rule,
 Note 1. for the Nominative Case that follows *En* and *Ecce* is not really governed of those Adverbs, but of some Verb understood; as *Ecce frater*, supposes *est*, *venit*, or some such Verb after the Nominative.

Note 2. These Adverbs *En*, *Ecce* and *Hem* are sometimes found with the Dative Case *tibi* after them, and then seem to have *adeſt* or *ostendo* understood; as *En tibi Lamsacenus*, *Plaut.* *Ecce tibi Seboſus*, *Cic. ad Att.* 1. 2. *Hem tibi Davum*, *Ter. Andr.* 5. 2. By which Phrases they mean no more than *Yonder is ſuch a one*. ſo that *tibi* is uſ'd only for Elegance ſake, as it is
 in

in *Virgil*, when he says *Tibi descriit Hesperus Octavi*, *Ecl. 8.* And indeed no Interjection can properly be said to govern its following Case, but it is rather some Verb understood, which the Passion and Earnestness of the Speaker causes him to omit; as *O festus Dies hominis*, if entire, is *O quam festus es dies hominis.* *Hon pietas, & prisca Fides!* i. e. *Hon quanta erat Pietas & prisca Fides.*

The Nominative of the first, second, Note 1. on
Ell. 1. & 2. and third Persons is always express in the following Cases:

1. For Distinctions sake; as *Boni quoniam convenimus ambo, Tu calamos inflare leves, ego dicere versus.* *Virg.*
2. When we would express a Person to be solely or eminently concerned in an Action; as *Nam vos mutastis & illas,* *Ovid.* *Tu dominus, tu vir, tu mihi frater eris,* *Id.* *Ille meas errare boves permisit,* *Virg. Ec. 1.*
3. When we speak to or of a Person with Contempt; as in that of *Virgil*, *Ec. 3.* *Cantando tu illum?* or *Cic. in ver. 5.* *Tu innocentior quam Metellus?*
4. Or when the Verb is understood; as *Quis igitur illum ab ea abstraxit, nisi Ego?* *Ter.*

Many other Nominatives are omitted before the Verb, when the Signification of the Adverb, that follows the Verb

Note 2.

Verb directs us to the Nominative understood.

Thus Terence And. 1. 1. *Prope adest cum alieno more vivendum est*; the Adverb *cum* directs to *tempus*, as the Nominative Case to *adest*. The same does *Est quando*. *Est ubi* directs sometimes to Time, and sometimes to Place; as *Est ubi depellat somnos minus invida cura*? Hor. l. 1. Ep. 10. *Est ubi plus tepeant Hyemes*? Id. ibid. *Quod* and *cur* direct to *Causa* or *Ratio* understood; as *Si tu animum vicisti, est quod gaudeas*, Plaut. *Erat cur illo speraremus quæ summa sunt*, Cic.

Note 3.

It is usual also for other Nominative Cases to be understood, when the Signification of the Verb directs us to the Nominative; as *Lucescit, vesperscit, ningit, pluit, &c. Nubes, Cælum, Dies*. And before the Impersonal Passives, *Iur, vivitur, &c. Iter, vita*.

Note 4.

Likewise when the Word *some* or *any* is the Nominative to *est* or *sunt* before the Relative *qui*, or the Adverb *unde*, it is elegant to leave out the said Nom.

As *Eas litteras, cum erit cui des, dabis*, Cic. *Sunt quos curriculo pulverem Olympicum collegisse juvat*, Hor. *Velim consideres, ut sit unde nobis suppedientur sumptus necessarii*. Cic. So *Res* is understood before *bene est* or *bene habet*, and *fas* or *facultas* before *cernere erat* in Virg. *Æn. 6.* and *Fallere quos non est*, in Ovid. de Trist. Eleg. 2. and *Recordatio* in that of Cicero, *Illius diei mihi venit in mentem*, and in that of Plautus, *In mentem venit de speculo*, and the like.

Note 5.

Add to these that there is sometimes found an *Ennallage* of the second Person

son for the third, namely, when the Word *One, a Man, or a Body* is the Nominative Case.

As *Quid facias?* Ter. *What can a Man do?* *Vita est quasi cum ludas tesseriis.* Id. *Life is as when a body plays at Dice.* But this is also rendred by *Quis* set immediately after the Verb; as *One* may ask, *Roget quis, quid tibi cum illa?* Teren. Eun. 3. 3.

Hence we may observe, that Verbs *On Id. 1.* commonly called Impersonals, and said to have no Nominative, have indeed the Infinitive Mood, or the whole Sentence that follows for a Nominative; or else the Nominative may be made out by the foregoing Note, and be supplied by *Res.*

The English more regarding the Par- *On Id. 2.* ticle *it* that stands before the Verb, than the real Nominative Case that follows, seem to speak out of Concord, when they say, *It is I,* instead of, *I am.* *It is a hundred Miles.* *It is many Tears.* yet *Plautus* seems to have imitated this English Idiom *Aul. Prol.* where he says, *Adultos annos est cum hanc domum possideo,* and again in *Persa. 1. 3.* *Siquidem hic Leno nondum sex menses Megaribus hic est cum commigravit,* for *multi anni sunt, sex menses sunt.* The Ellipsis of which Gram- marians say must be supplied thus; *Tempus est ante multos annos, or ante sex menses.* However this is not to be imitated.

If

On Id. 3.
Note 2.

If a proper Name of a Man or Woman be the first Nominative Case in Construction, then the Verb shall never agree with the Case that follows; as *Reipublica pestis a Cicerone Antonius appellatus est*, could not be rendred *apellata*; nor *Semiramis sexam mentita puer credita est*, Just. l. 1. be rendred *creditus*.

Note 2.

Though when a Verb comes thus between two Nominative Cases, we are at Liberty (except in the Case aforementioned) which Nominative we will make the Verb agree with, yet according to the several Positions of the Words, it may be more elegant to make it agree with one Nominative than with another.

As 1. If the Verb is put between the two Nominatives in their natural order; it must rather agree with the former; as *Vestes sunt lana*, is better than *est*. *Uxor & insidia sunt pudor ille mea*, Ovid.

2. Though the Verb stand still between, yet the Order of the Nominative Cases may be inverted, so that the Nominative, which in Order of Construction should stand before it, stands after it, and that which should stand after, stands before. In this case also the Verb best agrees with that Nominative that stands first; as *Magna divitiae sunt composita paupertas*, Sen. but is sometimes found agreeing with the latter, as *Sanguis erant lachrymae*, Luc.

3. Sometimes the Verb stands before both Nominative Cases, and sometimes after both, and will best agree with that which stands nearest; as *Consularis fuit initium ludi Compitalitii*, Cic. *Vestes quas geritis candida lana fuit*, Ovid. *Omnia pontus erat*, Id. *Gens universa Veneti appellati*, Cic. Tho' sometimes it is otherwise; as *Captivi militum prada fuerunt*, Liv. *Ossa lapia sunt*, Ovid.

NOTES on Chap. III.

The Rule of the Genitive.

Part 2. **W**E find this Rule often deviated from by Authors: The Use of the Oblique Cases.

1. When the former Substantive is a Noun Verbal; for then Antient Authors use the Case that the Verb governs, from whence the Verbal is derived, instead of the Genitive. (a)

2. When the latter Substantive is *virile* or *muliebre* *sexus* or *genus* with *omne*, *id*, *quod*, *hoc*, *idem*. (b)

Or if *maxima pars* comes before another Subst. with *of* between, the Latins sometimes make them both Nominat. (c)

3. When *of* that follows the Word Author, we find it *id*, not *ejus*; or of what, we find it *quid* not *ejus*. (d)

4. When *Age* is the latter Substantive after *of*, with *this*, *that*, *the same*, *what*, we find indeed *etatis* of the Genitive, but not the said Pronouns adjoining. (e)

5. The Particle *of* after *second*, *third*, *fourth*, &c. before the Word *Kalends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, is often rendred by an Accusative instead of a Genitive. (f)

(a) Quid tibi hanc rem curatio est? Plaut. Amph. 1. 3. for *hujus rei*.

(b) Virile sexus nunquam ullum habui, Plaut. Rud. 1. 2. I never had any of the male Sex. *Adfluxere virile & muliebre sexus omnis Ætas*, Tac. An. 1. 4. Quid profectò fiet, si de id genus rebus confabulemur, A. Gell. 13. 11.

(c) So Plaut. Capt. 2. 1. *Ferè maxima pars morum hunc homines habent*. The greatest part of Men have this Custom.

(d) Idne estis Autores mibi? Ter. Andr. 5. 8. Quid nunc mibi autores estis? Plaut. Pæn. 3. 4.

(e) Cum cæteris idem ætatis nobilibus, Tac. An. 1. 13. c. 16. Quid tibi ego ætatis videor, Plaut. Merc. 2. 2.

(f) Sexto Calendas, tertio Nonas, quarto Idus Examples abound. *Ante* is understood.

Note 2. Of between two Substantives in some Cases may be best rendred by a Preposition, and those are

1. When the Substantive, that follows the Sign *of* signifies the Place where the former was born, or from whence he came, or to which he belongs. (a)

2. When the Particle *of* after a Substantive can be turn'd into *concerning*. (b)

3. After *pars* it is sometimes rendred by *de*. (c)

4. When this Particle *of* may be turned into *from* (as it may after *Periculum*, *Danger*) it is then made by an Ablative with *à* or *ab*; as *I am in danger of hunger*, *Periculum mihi est à fame*. Ter. Heaut. 5. 2. (d)

(a) *Pastor ab Amphryso*, Virg. Geor. 1. 3. *Herdonius ab Atticâ*, Liv. *Carneades ab Academiâ*, Macro. So the Greek, *Ἰνσὺν τῷ Στρώ Νάζαπέθ*. Jo. 1. 45. I don't find that *de* is ever used in this case before a Proper Name; for who ever heard of *Hannibal de Carthagine*, or *Pub. de Corneliis*. but before a Common Name with a local Adjective it is often. Thus Virgil Æn. 6. *Nec puer Iliaca quisquam de gente Latinos In tantum spe tollit avos*. In this Case *of* is sometimes rendred by an Ablative without a Preposition, as *Videa ibi hospitem Zacyntho*, Plaut. Merc. 5. 2. *Sed erat hac anus Corintho*, Id. But it is very often rendred by an Adjective Possessive, as *Clement of Alexandria*, *Clemens Alexandrinus*. Especially when any Battle is noted by the Name of the Place, where it was fought, as *Pugna Leuctrica*, in C. *Nepos Epam.* is better than *Pugna Leuctrorum*.

Sometimes
without a
Preposition

(b) *Hæc enim omnia ad hanc de diis immortalibus quæstionem referenda sunt*. Cic. de Nat. 1. 1.

However after these Nouns *Book*, *Fame*, *Mention*, and *Opinion*, *of* (tho' it can then always be turned into *concerning*) is found in good Authors rendred by a Genitive, as well as by an Ablative with *de*; as *Hæc historia est in libro Valerii factorum & dictorum memorabilium*, A. Gell. 12. 8. *Sunt quoque mutata ter quinque volumina formæ*. Ov. Trist. El. 3. *Magnam reliquit famam sui*, C. Nep. Lys. *Nullam fecit cometarum mentionem*, Sen. Neque enim valde adventus ejus opinio, Cic.

(c) *Partibus etiam de cenâ dignatus est*, Suet. T. Flav. parag. 11. *Quæ tamen ex illis alia pars*

humida succo. Ovid. Met. l. 1. *Tantum spatii de monte tenebas,* Id. ibid. for *tantam partem montis.* *Ne expers partis esset de nostris bonis,* Ter. Heaut. 4. 1.

(d) Vossius and from him Walker would have that Phrase so often us'd in Ter. *Fores crepuere ab ea,* or *crepuit a Glycerio ostium,* and the like, to be reckoned a Deviation from this principal Rule, being, say they, as if he had said *ejus fores crepuere,* or *Glycerii ostium crepuit;* but I rather think *ab ea,* or *a Glycerio* to be put for *ab ejus* or *Glycerii domo,* as *Fuisti apud Leccam,* Cic. in Catil. Orat. 1. signifies *At Lecca's House;* namely, the Possessor being put for his House.

I am not ignorant, that Grammarians reckon the Genitive after all Adjectives, Verbs and Adverbs to be Elliptical, but since the Ellipsis is concealed both in English and in Latin, I have inserted these Rules into the Analogical Syntax, seeing no Reason, why we should trouble ourselves about Ellipses, that no where appear. However for the sake of such Adjectives, Verbs or Adverbs, as are here inserted, whose Significations may not always allow of the Particle *of* to follow them in English; I have just mentioned the Ellipsis in the End of each Note.

On Obs. 1.

Note 1.

Under Adjectives that require a Genitive, signifying Covetousness or Desire, come these that follow, viz. *Amans, appetens, avarus, avidus, cupidus, cupiens, insatiabilis, parvus, petax, properus, rapax, studiosus, sitiens.*

As *Alexandri pectus insatiabile laudis*, *Valer. insatiabilis*
oblata occasionis propera, *Tac. Ann. l. 12. Omni-* *properus*
um utilitatum & virtutum rapacissimi. Plin. *rapax*

Under Adjectives signifying the Con- *Note 2.*
 trary, as *Liberality* or *Loathing*, come
Abstiniens, *fastidiosus*, *fugiens*, *fugax*, *fu-*
gitans, *indignans*, *impatiens*, *invidus*, *sper-*
nax, *benignus*, *liberalis*, *prodigus*, *profusus*.

As *Abstiniens ducentis ad se cuncta pecunia*, *Hor. abstiniens*
l. 4. Od. 9. Fastidiosus Literarum, *Cic. de clar. fastidiosus*
Orat. Servituti indignantissimus, *Col. Si forte indignans*
laudis invidus extirisset. Cic. pro Flac. Ductor invidus
Piso viros spernaces mortis agebat, *Sil. Ital. Vini spernax*
somnique benignus, *Hor. Sat. 3. l. 2. benignus*

Under Adjectives signifying Know- *Note 3.*
 ledge, come *Callidus*, *certus*, *consultus*, *docil-*
is, *doctus*, *experiens*, *expertus*, *exactus*,
gnarus, *intelligens*, *peritus*, *prudens*, *præfagus*,
præsciens, *sapiens*, *sciens*, *securus*, *scitus*,
sagax, *solers*.

As *Nemo illa tempestate militaris rei callidior ba-* *callidus*
hebatur. Tac. Hist. l. 2. c. 32. Insanientis dum
sapiencia consultus erro, *Hor. l. 1. Od. 34. Prævi consultus*
docilis Romana juvenus. Id. Sat. 2. l. 2. Pompeius docilis
omni regia præda potitus, transferre ea sermone no-
stro libertum suum Lenæum Grammaticæ artis doctissi- *doctus*
um jussit. Plin. l. 2. c. 2. de libris Mithridatis.
Inde genus durum sumus experiensq; laborum. Ovid. experiens
Met. l. 1. Nec subitum adventare militem; sed ve-
terem expertumq; belli. Tac. Hist. l. 4. c. 76. Ma- *expertus*
murius morum fabræne exactior artis. Ovid. Fast. exactus
l. 3. Filius imminentium intelligens. Tac. Ann. intelligens
l. 5. c. 9. Quæ minus infida ac trepida fuisset, ni
Achæi locorum prudentes institissent. Liv. 4. Bell. prudens
Maced. Qui sapiens esse rerum humanarum velit. A. sapiens
Gell. 13. 8. Nessus sciens vadiorum. Ovid. Met. sciens
l. 9. v. 108.

Under

Note 4. Under Adjectives signifying Ignorance come, *Ambiguus, anceps, anxius, cecus, devius, dubius, ignarus, imprudens, imperitus, incertus, indoctus, inscius, nescius, rudis*.

cecus As *Ceca futuri mens hominum*, Stat. Theb. 5.
devius v. 718. *Deviis equi*, Sil. Ital. l. 1.

Note 5. Under Adjectives signifying Guilt, come *Affinis, conscius, reus, compertus, manifestus, noxius, prensus, suspectus*.

affinis As *Homines hujus affines suspicionis*, Cic. *Nullius compertus flagitii compertum*, Tac. l. 4. *Manifestum mendamini manifestus cii te teneo*, Plaut. Truc. 1. 2. *Ut noxium conjurationis*, Tac. Ann. l. 5. *Servos furti manifesti prensus prensos verberibus affici*, A. Gell. l. 10. 18.

Note 6. Under Adjectives signifying Innocence, come *Insons, innocens*.

Note 7. Under Adjectives signifying Care, come *Anxius, curiosus, diligens, memor, providus*.

curiosus As *Medicina peculiariter curiosus*, Plin. Jun. Ep. 173. *Poeta verborum diligentissimus*, A. Gell. l. 2. 26. *Multorum providus*, Hor. Ep. 2. l. 1.

Note 8. Under Adjectives signifying Negligence, are reckoned *Incautus, incuriosus, improvidus, immemor, indiligens, negligens, socors*.

incautus As *Formica non incauta futuri*, Hor. Sat. 1. l. 1.
incuriosus *Rerum antiquarum non incuriosus*, A. Gell. l. 6. 5.
socors *Nolim ceterarum rerum te socordem*, Ter. Ad. 4. 5.
indiligens *Cornelius Nepos rerum memoria non indiligens*, A. Gell. l. 15. c. 28.

Note 9. Under Adjectives signifying Fear, come *Formidolosus, metuens, timens, timidus*.

midus, trepidus, pavidus, reverens, and these Contraries, impavidus, interritus.

As *Formidolosorem hostium*, Tac. Ann. l. 1. c. 62. *formidolosus*
Trepidi rerum, Liv. *Impavidus somni*, Sil. l. 7. *trepidus*
 v. 129. *Et mens interrita Lethi*, Ovid. Me- *impavidus*
 tam. l. 10. *interritus*

The *Ellipsis* or Word commonly supposed to be understood between these Adjectives and their Genitives is *Causa, respectu* or *ratione*. The *Ellipsis* explained.

To these Grammarians add some Verbal Adjectives in *ax*, and Participial Adjectives in *ans* or *ens*. Many of them come under the foregoing Notes, and are accordingly there set down; those that do not, I shall put down, as many as I have met with. Note 10.

The Verbals in *ax* are

Capax, Incapax, Edax, Tenax.

The Participial Adjectives are

Audiens colens, conficiens, exsequens, ferens, perferens, gerens, impotens, obtegens, patiens, potens, pollens, retinens, servans, observans, temperans, tolerans, intolerans.

As *Audiens imperii*, Plaut. Truc. l. 2. *Qui sancti sunt cives, qui religionum colentes*, Cic. pro Planc. *Conficientissima literarum civitas*, Id. pro Flac. *Bonorum conficiencia*. Id. Matters that bring to pass good things. *Favorinus memoriarum veterum exsequentissimus*. A. Gell. 10 12. *Corpora hominum salubria, & ferentia laborum*, Tac. An. l. 21. *Expri- mere mores oratione perferentes injuriarum*, Cic. de Orat. *Sui negotii bene gerens*, Cic. pro Quinct. *Idem quod tu facis, faciunt rei male gerentes*, Plaut. Truc. l. 2. *Plemninus impotens ira*, Liv. l. 9. *Bell.*

audiens
colens
conficiens
exsequens
ferens
perferens
gerens
impotens

obtegens	Bell. Pun. <i>Animus audax, sui obtegens</i> , Tac. Ann. 4.
patiens	<i>Patiens pulveris atque solis</i> , Hor. l. 1. Od. 8.
potens	<i>Nimborumque facis, tempestatumque potentem</i> , Virg.
pollens	<i>Æn. 1. Vini pollens lepidus Liber</i> , Plaut. Curc. 1. 2.
retinens	<i>Salustius proprietatum in verbis retinentissimus</i> , A.
servans	Gell. 10. 21. <i>Servantissimus equi</i> , Ovid. Met. 1. 1.
temperans	<i>Quod minus rei foret, dicit famæ temperans</i> , Ter.
tolerans	Phorm. 2. 1. <i>Laborum tolerans</i> , Tac. Ann. 1. 4.
intolerans	<i>Laborum intolerans</i> , Id. 1. 1.

Note 11.

These Adjectives are not so confin'd to a Genitive, but that some of them do also admit of other Cases, as appears by the following Examples.

studiosus	<i>Conviviorum apparatus studiosior</i> , Just. 1. 9. 8. <i>Vino modo cupida estis</i> , Plaut. Pseud. 1. 2. <i>Tu me de Lentuli tui studii certiore facias</i> , Cic. 1. 1. Ep. 9.
cupidus	<i>Nunquam autem certior fui quam in hac regorio</i> , Id.
certus	ad Att. 1. 8. Epist. 5. <i>Quis P. Octavio ingenio prudentior, jure peritior</i> , Cic. pro Cluent. So
peritus	<i>Fure consultus</i> is often met with in Cicero, and
consultus	<i>Rerum usu peritus</i> in him and Caesar. <i>Militari disciplina peritus</i> , A. Gell. 4. 8. <i>Non tam ad dicendum admirabiles quam docti & Græcis literis & Latinis</i> , Cic. de Clar. Orat. <i>In eodem mihi videntur omnes ludo doctæ ad malitiam</i> , Ter. Hec. <i>Ne de hac re pater imprudentem opprimat</i> , Ter. And. <i>Ad mala jam pridem non sumus ulla rudes</i> , Ovid. de Pont.
doctus	<i>Eleg. 7. Conscium illi facinori fuisse arbitrabantur</i> , Cic. pro Clu. <i>Reus erat apud Græsum Vettius de vi</i> , Cic. ad Att. 1. 2 Ep. 24. <i>O medicum suavem atque docilem ad hanc disciplinam</i> , Cic. 1. 7. Ep. 29. <i>Habebant & Cesaris juvenes sturnum, item Iulianias Græco atq; Latino sermone dociles</i> , Plin. 1. 10. c. 4.
imprudens	<i>Regni crimine insons</i> , Liv. <i>Ne super tali scelere suspectum sese haberet</i> , Sal. Jug. c. 71. <i>Villa usibus capax</i> , Plin. Jan. 1. 2. Ep. 17. <i>Animi ad præcepta capacis</i> , Ovid. Met. 1. 8. v. 243. <i>Not rapacis</i> , as
rudis	
conscius	
reus	
docilis	
insons	
suspectus	
capax	

some Editions read it.

Besides

Besides the Adjectives above-mentioned there are some others found with a Genitive Case chiefly among Poets and Historians, and not so proper to be imitated in common Prose or Oratory, as

1. Those that govern a Genitive of the Subject, wherein they are, chiefly *Adjectives that govern a Genitive of the Subject Animi or Mentis.* and those are,

<i>Abiectus</i>	<i>Dubius</i>	<i>Furens</i>	<i>Macte</i>	<i>Sanus</i>
<i>Amens</i>	<i>Egregius</i>	<i>Ingens</i>	<i>Miser</i>	<i>Saucius</i>
<i>Anxius</i>	<i>Fervidus</i>	<i>Incertus</i>	<i>Maturus</i>	<i>Suspensus</i>
<i>Arrectus</i>	<i>Falsus</i>	<i>Invidus</i>	<i>Mutatus</i>	<i>Timidus</i>
<i>Audax</i>	<i>Felix</i>	<i>Infelix</i>	<i>Præstans</i>	<i>Trepidus</i>
<i>Ager</i>	<i>Ferox</i>	<i>Latus</i>	<i>Præceps</i>	<i>Vecors</i>
<i>Confidens</i>	<i>Fidens</i>	<i>Lapsus</i>	<i>Recreatus</i>	<i>Victus</i>
<i>Cæcus</i>	<i>Fortunatus</i>	<i>Lassus</i>	<i>Rectus</i>	<i>Validus</i>

2. Those that take a Genitive instead of an Ablative signifying the Cause, *A Genit. for an Abl. signifying the Cause.*

As *Ager rerum*, Flor. 3. 17. *Fessus rerum*, Virg. *Spei fatigati*, Apul. *Hyemisque æstusque famisque invidus*, Sil. l. 3. v. 325. *Lassus maris*, Hor. l. 2. Od. 6. *Lata laborum*, Virg. Æn. l. 11. *Eloquentia & fidei præclarum*, Tac. Ann. l. 4. *Norique operum Ielsbines*, Stat. Theb. 2. *Viridissimus Ircæ*, Sil. l. 5. v. 568. *Præstantissimus sapientiæ*, Tac. l. 6.

3. Those that take a Genitive instead of an Ablative, expressing in what respect or manner a Thing is so or so qualified; *A Genit. for an Abl. expressing the Manner*

As *Atrox odii*, Tac. Ann. l. 12. *Morum diversus*, Id. *Elegantissimus verborum Latinorum*, A. Gell. l. 1. c. 7. *Fortunatus Laborum*, Virg. Æn. 11. v. 416. *Impar militiae*, Tac. Ann. l. 3. *Acer belli Vellei Patere*, l. 3. 3. *Ingratus salutis*, Virg. Æn. 10. *Integer vita*, Hor. Ævi, Virg. *Annorum*, Stat.

Lenis irarum, Buch. *Lentus capti*, Sil. l. 13. *Felices operum*, Virg. G. l. 1. *Ævi maturus*, Id. Æn. 5. *Minor capitis*, Hor. Od. 5. l. 3. *Miseri morum*, Stat. Theb. 4. v. 403. *Modicus originis*, Tac. Ann. l. 6. *Occultus odii*, Id. l. 4. *Recti pertinax*, Id. *Pervicax ira*, Id. *Judicii rectus*, Sen. de vit. beat. c. 6. *Gens perfida pacti*, Sil. l. 1. *Fidei sinister*, Id. ibid. *Occasionum haud segnis*, Tac. Ann. l. 16. *Seri studiorum*, Hor. Sat. 10. l. 1. *Vetus operis*, Tac. Ann. l. 1. c. 20. *Veri vana*, Virg. Æn. 10. v. 629. *Voti vanus*, Sil. l. 12. *Irrita voti*, Stat. l. 11. v. 511. *Devius equi*, Sil. l. 1. *Prob degener alta virtutis Patrum*, Id. l. 10. v. 67. See from in chap. 8. N. 3. in fin.

On Obs. 2. Likewise the universal *All* rendred
Note 1. by *Cuncti*, is sometimes found with a Genitive, as *Cunctisque civium, si bonis artibus fiderent, licitum petere magistratus*, Tac. Ann. l. 11.

Note 2. Under this Rule comes that Passage of *Horace*, l. 2. Od. 19. *Idem pacis eras, mediusque belli*. *Medius* being put paritively, and signifying in *medio*. like that of *Statius*, 1 Theb. v. 118. *Audiet & medius cali Parnassus*. or that of *St. John*, 1. 26. Μέσθ' δὲ ὑμῶν ἕστηκεν. There stands one in the midst of you.

Note 3. The English Word *both*, if of follows it, is a Noun Partitive, and must be exprest in Latin by *uterque* rather than by *ambo*; as *Horum uterque cecidit victus* is better than *Horum ambo ceciderunt victi*.

Note 4. If the Genitive Case after these Partitives, Interrogatives, &c. happen to be

be the Word *Us* or *You*; they must not be rendred by *nostri* and *vestri*, but rather *nostrum* and *vestrum*; though in all other Cases the Latins use rather *nostri* and *vestri*, as we must not say, *Unusquisque nostri*, but *nostrum*, nor *Domine miserere nostrum*, nor *Sum memor vestrum*, but rather *nostri* and *vestri*. See A. Gell, 20. 6.

This Rule of the Partitives governing a Genitive seems to be contradicted,

Note 5.

1. When the Particle *Of* after Partitives, &c. is rendred (as it often is) by an Ablative with *de*, *e*, *ex*, or an Accusative with *inter*,

2. By such Nouns Partitive in English as loose their Partitive Signification in the Latin, whereof some are used indifferently both in English and Latin; as we may say, *He called out the first Legion*, or *the first of the Legions*; therefore we say also in Latin, *Primam legionem evocavit*, or *primam legionum*. Others are so used indifferently only in the Latin and not in the English, as in Latin I may say, *Ceteri militum*, or *ceteri milites*; but in English can only say, *The Rest of the Soldiers*. Others on the contrary are Partitive in English, but never so in Latin; as I can say partitively, *The Rest of the Company*, but must not say in Latin *Cetera turba*, but *cetera turba*. So likewise *Mille* *χίλις* the Ad-

jective never has a Genitive, to distinguish it from *Mille χιλιάς*, which always hath a Genitive, as being a Substantive.

Thus we say, *Centies mille pedites* not *peditum*, or *Centum millia peditem* not *pedites*. So in *Mille annorum*, *Mille* is a Substantive, in *Mille anni*, *Mille* is an Adjective. *vid.* A. Gell. l. 1. c. 16.

Nevertheless we find sometimes in Authors, though rarely, *Mille χιλιάς* with a Substantive of the same Case by Apposition, as *Naves decies centum millia*, Just. *Quatuor millibus passibus*, Vitruv. *In hujus urbis gaza fuisse centum & viginti millia talenta*, Curt. l. 5. c. 6. *Erant enim in thesauris centum millia talenta*, Just. l. 13. None of the Authorities are extraordinary.

3. By the Pronoun *which*, for that Pronoun, tho' it stand with a Partitive or Superlative with the Particle *of*, and should by the Rule be therefore put in the Genitive Case, yet is commonly found in Authors to agree with the Partitive or Superlative, with which it is joined in Case, Gender and Number.

As *Quas paucas* (sc. *mammās*) *habent ea bestiae quae pauca gignunt*, Cic. de Nat. Deor. l. 1. for *quarum paucas*. *Calore, quem multum habet stomachus*, Id. ibid. for *cujus multum*. Thus Virgil *Aen.* 2. *Vulneraque illa gerens, quae circum plurima muros accepit patrios*, for *quorum plurima*. and again *Aen.* 3. *Præceptis Heleni dederas quae maxima, rite Furioni Argivæ jussos adolemus honores*. So *qualis* is used *Aen.* 7. *Qualia multa mari nauta patitur in alto*, for *qualium*.

Note 6.

There are besides these many Adjectives that are Partitive in English, i. e. express a Part of the Whole, which by

a peculiar Elegance in the Latin Tongue loose their Partitive Signification after the same Manner as *Qui* does in the forementioned Examples,

As Ovid. de Trist. El. 1. *Nobis habitabitur orbis Ultimus*, for *ultima pars orbis*. So *Domus interior*, in Virg. *Primis labris, extremis labris*, Cic. *Hibernus annus, Pomifero anno*, Hor. *Sero vespere*, Ovid. *Lævo amne*, Tac. *Ad multam noctem*, and *Multo denique die castra movemus*, Cæsar. Instances abound every where. We seem to imitate them when we say, *The Learned World*, meaning, *The Learned part of the World*.

Nor do these Partitives, Numerals, &c. always take the Gender of the Genitive Case, for we read *Boves animalium soli retro ambulantes pascuntur*, Plin. *Dulcissime rerum*, Hor. *Humanarum rerum pleraque*, Sal. Jug. Note 7.

Not only Adjectives, but also some few Verbs signifying *Plenty* or *Want* are sometimes found with a Genit. tho' they have not in English the Sign of after them, but purely in Imitation of these Adjectives, whom they resemble in Signification, or else in Imitation of the Greeks, and they are these, *Impleo, complco, expleo, saturo, obsaturo, scateo, careo, egeo, indigeo*, to which we may add *participo*, which is also found with a Genitive, when it signifies *copiam facere alicujus*, to make one Partaker of something, as in that of Plautus, *Pater-num servum sui participavit consilii*. To which Vossius adds *inficio, esurio* and *sitio*, out of Apul. p. 432. Note 1.
On Obs. 3.

Of

Note 2.

Of these Ajectives signifying Plenty, Scarcity or Want, some govern nothing but a Genitive, and they are these; *Compos, impos, consors, exsors, particeps*. Others rather a Genitive than an Ablat. viz. *Benignus, fertilis, ferax, largus, letus, liberalis, modicus, immodicus, prodigus, profusus, prosper, uber, effatus, egenus, expens, indigus, parcus, pauper, purus, sterilis*. Others govern rather an Ablative than a Genitive, viz. *Contentus, distentus, fectus, gravis, gravidus, onustus, opulentus, pregnans, refertus, captus, exul, jejunu, liber, mutilus, orbis, solutus, truncus, viduus*. To these may be added, *irritus, secretus* found with a Genitive, and *siccus* with an Ablative, as *Ne se irritum spei pateretur abire*, Curt. l. 6. c. 5. *Corpora secreta teporis*, Lucr. l. 2. v. 842. *Void of warmth*. *Et siccum sanguine guttur*, Virg. Æn. 8. Others have after them either Case, viz. *Abundans, dives, fecundus, locuples, mæste, plenus, satur, immunis, inanis, infecundus, inops, nudus, orbis, vacuus*.

The Ellipsis
explain'd.

The Substantive commonly said to be understood before this Genitive, is *re, substantia, copia*, and the like.

On Obs. 4.

These Adjectives of Quantity of the Neuter Gender, that require a Genitive Case, such as *Multum, nimium, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, parum, paululum, minus, minimum*, require this Genitive

nitive only in the Nominative and Accusative Cases Singular, as we may not say, *Multo doloris accepi nunciam*, but *multo dolore*.

The Verbs of *Accusing* found with a Genitive are these that follow, viz. On Obs. 4.
Note 1.

Accuso, *adstringo*, *ago*, *alligo*, *accerso*, *arcesso*, *arguo*, *coarguo*, *convinco*, *defero*, *increpo*, *incuso*, *infamo*, *insimulo*, *interrogo*, *prehendo*, *postulo*, *urgeor*, and amongst the Lawyers, *obligo*, *obstringo*, *teneor*. As *Homo furti sese adstringit*, Plaut. Pæn. 3. 4. *adstringo* *Modo avaritia singulos increpans*, Suet. increpo *Cal. c. 39. Ut prius infamaretur parracidi cacus*, Quint. Declam. 2. *Quia male administrata Provincia, Et aliorum criminum urgebatur*, Tac. l. 6. The rest are *urgeor* common. But of these *ago* never has an Accusative of the Person, as the rest have, but an Ablative with *cum*, as *Cum servo furti agit*, Cic. pro Cluent. not *servum*.

This Genitive after Verbs of *Accusing* Note 2. is always of the Crime, except after *Accerso*, *arcesso* and *accuso*, which are found sometimes with the Word *capitis*, as *Non ficto crimine insectari*, *non expetere vitam*, *non capitis accersere*, Cic. pro Dej. id est, *in causa capitis*. *Metellum omnibus concionibus capitis arcessere*, Sal. Jug. c. 73.

Induco (which sometimes signifies to Note 3. *Accuse*, as Budæus observes p. 98. *accusare* com-

commonly does) is found with a Genitive once in *Plautus*, as quoted by *Budavus*, as *Injuriarum multo induci satius est*.

Note 4.

There are several other Verbs of *Accusing*, as *Taxo*, *sugillo*, *culpo*, &c. but no Authority for using them with a Genitive; as if we were to render *I tax you of Arrogance*, *Taxo te arrogantia*, is not allowed for want of Authority, but rather *Taxo tuam arrogantiam*.

Note 5.

Nay these very Verbs that govern a Gen. of the Crime, are found sometimes to turn it into an Accusative, governed, I suppose, of *ob* or *propter* understood. Therefore we find, *Si id me non accusas, tute ipse objurgandus es*, *Plaut. Trin. 1. 12*. *Arguitur pleraque*, *Tac. l. 6. in princip.* *Multaque se incusat*, *Virg. Æn. 12. v. 612*. *Ferre eadem omnia que tute dudum coram me incusaveras*, *Ter. Phorm. 5. 7*. But this is done commonly when the Crime is exprest by some Pronoun, or *multa*, *pleraque*, *cuncta*, and the like. However we find in *Plautus*, *Amph. 2. 2*. *Mirum est qui collibitum fiet meo viro, sic me insimulare falsum facinus tam malum*.

Note 6.

Under Verbs of *Condemning* that govern a genitive, come *Damno*, *condemno*, *noto*, *judico*, as *Si eques Romanus equum habere gracilentum, aut parum nitidum visus erat, impolitia notabatur*, *A. Gell. l. 4. c. 12*. *Centurionem judicatum pecunia cum vidisset,*

noto

judico

set, Liv. Condemned in a Sum of Money. Confessi igitur aris ac debiti judicatis triginta dies sunt dati. A. Gell. 20. 1.

To these we might add *perdo*, for that *Note 7* is found often in *Plautus* with *capitis*, as *Quem ego capitis perdam, Mil. Glor. 2. 4. Capitis te perdam ego, & filiam, Asin. 1. 12. and Bac. 3. 3.*

For these Verbs of *Condemning* have a *Note 8*. Gen. as well of the Punishment as of the Crime, and therefore *capitis damnatus*, is found in Authors as well as *capite*, tho' not so frequent. *Vid. Suet. Domit. c. 11. and A. G. 3. 9 and 17. 21. and not only that, but A. Gell. has also, Judex hominem pecunia damnabat, l. 20. c. 1. and Horace has Damnatus longi Sisyphus Aolides laboris, l. 2. Od. 14. for ad laborem, which also is usual in this Case. Virgil has used mortis after damnatus for ad mortem, Aen. 6. Hos juxta falso damnati crimine mortis. Unjustly condemn'd to Death.*

Under Verbs of *Acquitting* come, *Ab-* *Note 9.* *solvo, purgo, libero*, whereof *absolvo* takes a Genitive not of the Crime only, but also of *capitis* the Punishment; as *Cacilius judex absolvit injuriarum eum, qui Lucium Poetam nominatim laeserat, Cic. ad Heren. l. 2. Capitis absolutus pecunia multatus est, C. Nep. Milt. Purgo and libero but rarely govern a Genitive, as Novi, & morbi miror purgatum te illius, Hor. 2. Sat.*

Sat. 3. v. 27. *Liberavit ejus culpa regem*, Liv. But this is very rare. See the Particles of and from chap. 8.

Note 10.

The simple Verb *moneo* is very seldom found with a Genitive in Classics; as *Temporis & necessitatis monet*, Tac. Ann. 1. 1. but rather takes an Ablative with *de*. However the Compounds *Admoneo*, *commoneo*, *commonefacio*, are very usually joyned with a Genitive.

The Ellipsis explain'd.

The Ellipsis of this Rule is suppos'd to be *reatus*, *crimen*, *causa*, &c. and *nomine* after *satisfdo*, found in Tully with a Genitive in Ver. p. 105. *Satisfdat damni infecti*.

On Obs. 6.

Under Verbs of Esteeming come *Estimo*, *pendo*, *facio*, *habeo*, *duco*, *fio*, *sum*, *puto*. And the Genitive Cases found after them are only, *Tanti*, *quantum* and its Compounds, and *magni*, *permagni*, *pluris*, *maximi*, *plurimi*, *parvi*, *minoris*, *minimi*, signifying *Price*, (but then they must be

Vid. Id. 5.

without their Substantive *Pretii*, or else they must be turned into an Ablative) and lastly *nihili*, which is sometimes turned into *pro nihilo*, sometimes (tho' rarely) without *pro*, as *Merito te semper maximi feci*, Ter. And. 3. 3. *Putare aliquid minimi*, Cic. ad Lent. 1. 1. *Deos quidem quos maxime æquum est metuere, eos minimi facit*, Plaut. Pseud. 1. 3. *Non quia sit bonum valere, sed quia sit non nihilo estimandum*,

mandum, Cic. de Fin. l. 4. And after three of these Verbs, namely *Æstimo*, *pendo*, *facio*, are found these Genitives also, viz. *Flocci*, *nauci*, *pili*, *assis*, *hujus*, *teruncii*, namely when we would express the small or no Value we set upon a Person or Thing.

The Ellipsis of this Rule seems to be *The Ellipsis Res pretii*. Thus *Pudor parvi penditur* is explained, as much as *res parvi pretii*, as appears from that Passage of *A. Gell. l. 11. c. 1.* where *pretii* is express'd with *parvi*; *Ad-dicebamur boves ovesque pretii parvi*. only *pluris* seems to have *pretio* understood before it, as *Pluris opes nunc sunt* in *Hor.* is as much as *pluris pretio*, are valued at the Price of more, for *majoris* is never used in this Case. Thus *Horace* himself supplies the Ellipsis, l. 1. Sat. 6. *Contra Levinum unius assis, nonnunquam pretio pluris licuisse*. The same Word *pretio* seems also to be understood before *flocci*, *nauci*, and the rest.

Consulo also and *facio* are sometimes *Note 2.* found with the Genitive Cases *aqui* or *boni*; and seem then to have the Signification of Verbs of *Esteeming*, being Phrases by which we express our good liking of any thing done, and answer that Anglicism, *I take it kindly* or *in good part*.

And then the Ellipsis seems to be *The Ellipsis Officium* or *Factum*, as if we should say, *explained,*

I esteem it as the Duty, or Act of an honest and good Man.

On Obs. 7. Terence has supplied the Ellipsis of this Genitive after *panitet, tadet, &c.* by *vicem* put for *propter vicem*, Heaut. 4. 4. *Menedemi vicem miseret me.* See chap. 6 Ell. 2.

Note 2. Sometimes among the Ancients this Genit. after *panitet, tadet, &c.* is turned into a Nominat. Thus *Plautus, Me quidem hac conditio nunc non panitet*, Stich. 1. 1. for *hujus conditionis. Quod hos post pigeat*, Id. *Neque se id pigere*, Ter. Heaut. Prol. And sometimes the Accusative is so turned too. So *Plaut. Capt 3. 5. Nemini misereri certum est, quia nemo miseret mei*, for *neminem*. See ch. 14. Not. 2.

Note 3. There are besides these certain other Verbs, that signify some Suffering of the Mind, and take a Genitive of the Part affected *animi* or *mentis*, and they are these, *Ango, decipio, discrucio, excrucio, fallo, pendeo, dispondeo*.

Note 4. There are others that govern a Genitive in Conformity to the Greeks; but are rarely found to do so, except in Historians and Poets, and they are, *Apiscor, abstineo, curo, decipior, desino, desisto, erubescor, fallor, fastidio, indoleo, invideo, levo, miror, regno, participo, ploro, prohibeo*.

As *Nihil abnuentem, dum dominationis apisceretur*, Tac. Ann. 1. 6. *Abstineo irarum calidaeque iræ*, Hor. 1. 3. Od. 27. *Virginitalis interfecta curant*,

apiscor
abstineo
curo

rant, Apul. l. 5. *Dulci laborum decipitur sono*, Hor. *decipior*
 l. 2. Od. 13. *Desine mollium querelarum*, Id. l. 2. *desino*
 Od. 9. *Tempus desistere pugnae*, Virg. *Æn.* l. 10. *desisto*
Qui erubescit fortuna, Curt. l. 5. *Nec sermonis erubescio*
fallebar tamen, Plaut. *Epidic.* 2. 2. *Fastidit mei, fallor, fa-*
 Plaut. *Aul.* 2. 2. *Successorumque Minervæ indoluit, stidio, in-*
 Ovid. *Met.* l. 2. *Neque ille sepositi ciceris nec longæ doleo*
invidit avena, Hor. *Sat.* 6. l. 2. *Ut me omnium invideo*
jam laborum levas, Plaut. *Rud.* 1. 4. *Fustitiane levo*
prius mirer, belline laborem, Virg. *Æn.* 11. *Dædus miror*
agrestium regnavit populorum, Hor. l. 3. Od. 30. *regno*
Hunc sui participat consilii, Plaut. *Cist.* 1. 3. *Capta participo*
prohibere nequiret cum Pænos aquila, Sil. l. 6. *Plo- prohibeo*
rem artis in te nil habentis exitum, Hor. *Epod.* 18. *ploro*

Parum seems rather to govern a Genitive, as being an Adjective of the neuter Gender, whose masculine and feminine are out of Use, as also *paulum* and *paululum*, and so does *nimum* (for *minis* appears not to have any such Case) as Ovid. *Met.* l. 3. v. 304. *Nimum feritatis in illo est.*

Satis and *abunde* are also obsolete Adjectives of the Neuter Gender undeclinable, and take a Genitive Case for the same Reason as those do that are mentioned in *Obj.* 4. and like them never have a Genitive, but when themselves are either Nominative or Accusative. Therefore Terence *Andr.* 1. 1. says, *Satis cum periculo*, *With danger enough*, not *cum satis periculi*.

Hence *satis* even in Composition is found with a Genitive after *sarago*;
 as

as *Etsi is quoq; suarum rerum satagit*, Ter. Heaut. 2. 1. Tho' if any other Nouns follow *satago* but *res*, it takes rather an Ablative with *de*; as *Consulibus de vi & multitudine hostium satagētibus*, A. G. 9. 11.

Note 4. *Amplius* likewise for the same reason, namely because it is a neuter Adjective, is sometimes found with a Genitive Case, as *Gaudeo tibi mea opera liberorum esse amplius*, Plaut. Cist. Act. 5.

Amplius is also found with a Genitive instead of an Ablative after the Particle *than*, as *Amplius duorum millium terga verterunt*, Hirt. but that seems to be by a Defect of *numero* understood. See ch. 8. Ell. 11. Note 3.

Note 5. And so is *secus* used for *minus* in Tac. *Nec multo secus in iis virium*. Nor was there much less Strength in them.

Note 6. To these we may add *affatim* and *largiter* used sometimes substantively for *copia*, and having therefore a Genitive Case, as *Affatim est hominum in dies qui singulas escas edunt*, Plaut. Men 3. 1. *Vini affatim*, Just. 1. 8. *Credo adepol illic inesse auri & argenti largiter*, Plaut. Rud. 4. 4. *Largiter mercedis indepiscar*, Id. Rud. 5. 2.

Note 7. And also *ergo* put substantively for *causa*; as *Illius ergo venimus*, Virg. Æn. 6.

Note 8. And *partim* which is an old Accusative of *pars* and governed of *secundum*; as *Quum partim Senatorum de Rhodiensibus*
querere

quererentur, A. Gell. l. 7. c. 3. *Partim sum earum exactus*, Ter. Hec. Prol. As to part of them.

Likewise *pridie* and *postridie* have a Note 9. Genitive, purely by Vertue of their Substantive Signification; the one being used for *priore die*, and the other for *postero die*.

For *pridie* we sometimes meet with *in ante diem*, as *Priscian* observes l. 18. and that also is found with a Genitive, as *In ante diem sextum Calendarum Novembrium*, Cic. 1. Inveſt. which A. Gell. uses with an Accusative l. 5. c. 17. *Cladem Pugnae Cannensis factam dicit in ante diem quartum nonas Sextilis*. Vid. ſupra Note 1. of this Chap.

Inſtar that has also a Genitive Case, is Note 1 certainly a Substantive, as appears from that of *Virgil* Æn. 6. *Quantum inſtar in ipſo*.

Eò, to that paſs, has a Genitive, be- Note cause it is as much as *in eo gradu* or *ſtatu*, ſo that *Eo impudentia ventum eſt*, or *eo rerum ventum eſt*, Curt. l. 5. is as much *in eo gradu impudentia*, or *in eo ſtatu rerum*.

Fruſtra animi eſ is found in *Apul. Apolog. pro Var.* but that is no more than *Faluſ animi eſ* in *Terence Eun.* 2. 2.

In like manner *huc* is used for *ad hunc* Note 2. *locum*, *ſtatum* or *gradum*, and *hic* for *in hoc loco* or *ſpatio*; and therefore takes a Genitive accordingly. So *Huc vicinia commigravit*, in *Ter. Andr.* and *Huc malorum ventum eſt*, Curt. l. 6. *Huccine re-*
rum

rum venimus, Pers. Sat. 3. *Hic vicinia*, Ter. Phorm. 1. 2. are easily made out.

Note 13.

There are other Adverbs found with a Genitive, but it is onely in some particular Phrases, and then the Genitive is of no Use to the Signification of the Phrase, but purely Idiomatical; as

1. *Quo*, *quoquo*, and *quovis*, never have any other Genitive after them, but *Gentium* or *Terrarum*. *Quo locorum* Hor.

2. *Ubi* and its Compounds, and *nusquam* or *usquam* have no other Genitive but *Gentium* or *loci*.

3. *Unde*, *minime*, *longe*, *quando*, (a) have no other Genitive but *Gentium*.

4. (b) *Ibidem*, (c) *adhuc*, (d) *postea*, none but *loci* or *locorum*.

5. *Nunc* has no other Genitive, but *temporis* or *dierum*.

6. Nor *Tunc* any but *temporis*.

7. *Interea* has no other but *loci*. *Interea temporis* is modern.

2. *Quoad* has none but *ejus*, and that but in one particular Expression, as when Cicero would say, *As far as it is possible*, he renders it *Quoad ejus fieri potest*.

(a) *Quando Gentium*, Plaut. Amph. 4. 2.

(b) *Si redierit illa ad hunc*, *ibidem loci res erit*, Id. Cist. 2. 1.

(c) *Ut adhuc locorum feci*, *faciam sedulo*, Id. Capt.

(d) *Postea loci Consul pervenit in oppidum*, Sal. Jug. cap. 12. *Postidea loci aliquam occipito cinedicam*, Plaut. Stich. 5. 5.

Leaving

Leaving out the former Substantive *On Ellip. 1.* before a Genitive Case is a Greek Way of Speaking and is usually found in Latin Authors.

1. When the former Substantive bears some Relation to the latter, as *Hectoris Andromache*, in *Virg.* and *Deiphobe Glauci*. *Jam Meropis dici cupiens*, *Ovid. l. 2.*

2. When the former Substantive is *Causa*, *Gratiâ* or *ratione*, for the sake of or on the Account of, as *Tacitus Ann. l. 3.* *Sed nostra quoque ætas multa laudis & artium imitanda posteris tulit*, To be imitated on the Account of Praise.

So *Getulicus mirum amorem assecutus erat effusa clementia*, *Id. l. 8. c. 4.* *Dii immortales Mercimonia lepidi*, *Plaut. Most. 3. 3.* *Id fecit abolenda magis infamiae ob amissum cum Quintilio Varo exercitum*, *Tac. Ann. l. 1.* Hence it is that *Lætor* and *verëtor* and some others are sometimes found with a Genitive amongst the Poets; as *Nec veterum meminì, lætorve malorum*, *Virg. Æn. 11.* *Neque hujus sis veritus semina primaria*, *Ter. Phorm. 5. 7.* *Regni hujus rapti furit*, *Sen. Theb. Act. 2.* So is that of *Silius* made out *l. 4.* *Laudabat Iethi juvenem*, and *laudande laborum l. 5. v. 561.*

3. When *Part*, *Property*, *Duty*, *Ways*, *Custom*, *Business*, are the former Substantives; as *Iniqui patris est*, *Ter. Andr.* *Natis in usum lætitiæ cyphis pugnare Thracum est*, *Hor. l. 1. Od. 27.* It is the *Way* or *Custom*. *Non est hujus loci atque temporis*, *Cic.* It is not the *Business* of this *Place* and *Time*. *Atque ut intelligamus nihil ho-*

rum esse fortuitum, & hæc omnia esse providæ solertisque Naturæ, Cic. de Nat. Deor. l. 1. That all these things are the Work or Business, &c. Neque sua neque Populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat, Cæs. B. G. c. 17. Nor does it seem to be the Business of his or the Roman Peoples dignity and station. So Moris est, It is the Custom, is often found for mos est in Val. Max. & Quins. Instit. l. 1. c. 10. and others, namely Negotium being understood.

4. Sometimes Thing or Man is understood before a Genitive; as *Pessimi exempli est, Plin. Epist. It is a Thing of most pernicious Example. Rationis est, Id. It is a Thing of Reason, or it stands to Reason. Tanta molis erat Romanam condere gentem, Virg. It was a Thing of such Difficulty. So tanti est and the like are as much as res est tanti pretii. Emere Denario quod est mille Denarium, Cic. Offic. l. 3. Which is a thing of a Thousand Denarii. Quicquid cohortium Prætorianorum fuit ut pessimi exempli uno exactoravit edicto, Suet. Vitell. c. 10. Arbitrii nostri non est quid quisque loquatur, Cat. Dist. Non opis est nostra, Virg. Æn. l. 1. It is not a thing belonging to our Power. Neque fas neque fidem pensi habere, Sal. Cat. l. 1. i. e. res opis nostra, rem pensi. Ut munus imperii beneficii sui faceret, Just. l. 13. c. 4. subaud. Rem esse. that he might make the Gift of the Empire to be*

a thing of his own benevolence. So for Man,
Qui alicujus rei est, Ter: Adelph 3. 3.
 Who is a Person of some Value. *Aliena ditionis facti*, Liv. *Quid tamen Jason potuit alieni arbitrii jurisque factus*, Sen. Med. Act. 2.

5. Sometimes Cause or Means; as
Malta contra morem consuetudinemque militarem fiebant, quæ dissolvenda disciplina severitatisque essent, Hirt. c. 65. a means to dissolve.

6. Sometimes Effect, as *Siquid adhuc ego sum muneris omne tui est*, Ovid. de Trist. ad Ux. The Effect of your Bounty. *Deos alios Grandævos, alios Juvenes puerilium deliramentorum est*, Cic de Nat. Deor. The Effect of Childish Dotage.

7. Sometimes Pretium before opera, as *Ego, opera si sit, plus tecum loquar*, Plaut. Psend. 1. 3.

8. Sometimes Via, Iter or Spatium, as *Abest bidui*, sc. iter. *Aut si adeo, bidui est, aut tridui*, Ter. And. sc. Spatio.

9. We find also sometimes a Defect of Compos, which occasions a Genit. Case; as when we say, *Sui juris est*, He is his own Man. and in that of Ovid. Met. 1. 2. *Quæ postquam firma suique Roboris esse videt.*

Yet *Memini*, to mention, takes only a Genitive, or Ablative with *de*; as *Næque omnino hujus rei meminit usquam Poeta. De quibus multi meminerunt*, Quint.

On Id. 3.

These Genitives *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, signifying for so much or so great a Price, &c. are changed into an Ablat. whenever their Substantive Price or Reward is added to them in Latin. Thus *Livy l. 2. Dec. 3. Cum pretio minore redimendi captivos copia fieret.* and *A. Gell. Tantamercede docuit, quanta baetenus nemo.*

The Ellipsis
explain'd.

The Ellipsis before these Genitives seems to be *pretio*, for so Horace has supplied it, *l. 1. Sat. 6. v. 12.*

On Id. 6.

Sometimes these Genitives after *interest* and *resert* signifying the Degree are rendred into Latin by Adverbs, and so imitate the English Idiom.

Thus we often find in Authors *tantum resert* for *tanti*, and *quantum* for *quanti*, *multum, permultum, plurimum*, for *magni, permagni*, and lastly *parum* for *parvi*. To these Genitives *Vossius* joyns *pluris*, for which Authors rather use *plus* or *magis*.

The Ellipsis
explained.

The Ellipsis is much the same as it is before a Genitive after Verbs of Esteeming, *Obs. 6.* so *magni resert quibuscum vixeris*, is as much as *resert ut res magni pretii* or *momenti*.

On Id. 7. These Pronouns Possessive *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, and *cujus* used after the Impersonals *interest* and *resert*, and reckoned Ablatives Feminine by *Lilly, Vossius, Nouvelle Method*, and most Grammarians, seem rather to be Neuter Accusatives, as will appear by the Explanation of the Ellipsis.

The

The Ellipsis of this Rule has caused much ^{The Ellipsis} Dispute among Grammarians, on the Determination of which depends the Resolution of that Question, whether *mea, tua, sua*, us'd after these

Vrebs *interest* and *refert* be Ablat or Accusatives? Some Grammarians (amongst which are *Priscian* and *Vossius*) will have the Ellipsis to be *in re*, and say, that *interest* in this Sense signifies as much as *in re est*, and seems agreeable to that of *Plautus*, *Utrumne veniat, necne, nihil in re est mea*. So that *interest omnium bene vivere*, is as much as *in re est omnium*, It is among all Mens Concerns. and *refert omnium*, is as much as *refert in re omnium*, It is of Signification in all Mens profit and Advantage, as it signifies in *Ter. And. 3. 3. Si in re est utrique accersi jube*, which *Vossius* says is the Reading in his Manuscripts, and those of *Rivinus* and *Linacer*. And this *in re* they make the Substantive to *mea, tua, sua*, &c. or else say they, they agree with *gratia* understood, agreeable to that of *Plautus* in *Persa 4. 3. lin. 68. Mea istuc nihil refert, tua refert gratia*, for *de gratia*. but *gratia* is elegantly omitted as *χάρις* or *ἔννεα* is among the Greeks. And to support this they add further, that *mea, tua, sua* must needs be Ablatives, otherwise *a* would not be long in *Terence*, as it is in this Instance, *Phorm 5. 8. Vos me indotatis modo patrocinari fortasse arbitrmini, etiam dota-tis sole - O quid id nos-tra nihil*. Others are of Opinion (amongst which are *Donatus*, *Scaliger* and *Sanctius*) that after *interest*, *negotia* is understood, and after *refert*, *ad negotia*, and therefore that *mea, tua*, and the rest are Neuter Accusatives agreeing with *negotia*. So that *interest omnium*, or *interest mea*, is as much as *est inter omnium negotia*, or *est inter mea negotia*. *Refert omnium*, or *refert mea*, is as much as *refert se ad mea* or *omnium negotia*. It belongs to my Concerns. So *Tully de Sen. 13. Referre omnia*

suam Utilitatem, and again de Offic. l. 30. *Virtus cultusque corporis ad valetudinem referantur.* and *Plaut. Pers.* in divers Places of *Plautus* we read, *quam ad rem* 4. 3. & 4. *istuc refert*, which *ad rem* he sometimes turns into a Dative, as *Truc.* 2. 5. lin. 40. *Cui rei retulit te id assimilare*, and so does *Horace*, l. 1. Sat. 1. *Vel dic quid referat intra Natura fines viventi jugera centum, an Mille aret.* To that Quotation out of *Terence*, *etiam dotatis soleo, quid id nostra nihil*, they answer, that very little can be concluded from the loose Metre of Comic Poets; that very like that *nihil* should be *nil*, and then it would conclude for them. However it is certain, that in other Places of *Terence*, that very *a* in *mea, tua, &c.* is short; thus *Eun.* 2. 3. lin. 28. *Fac tra-das, mea - nihil - refert - dum poti-ar modo*, and again *Heaut.* 4. 5. lin. 45. *Eo - nunc con-fugies, - quid mea? - num mihi - datum est?* And, that *interest* or *refert se* in *re mea* or *mea gratia*, is not Latin; that it is doubtful whether the Place quoted out of *Plautus*, *Utrumne ventat, necne, &c.* be there; or if it be, whether it be fairly represented. For *Vossius* has named no Place where it is to be found, and is sometimes guilty of misrepresenting, as will appear in the next Place quoted out of *Plautus*. That Passage quoted out of *Ter. And.* 3. 3. must be *in rem*, as we find it now in our Books, because *in re* in that Sense would not be Latin; and that quoted out of *Plautus Persa* is quite misrepresented, the Words not being *mea istuc nihil refert, tua refert gratia*, but *mea quidem istuc nihil refert, tua ego refero gratia*. from whence nothing can be concluded to their Disadvantage. Vid. *Voss.* de Const. cap. 29. and *Sanct. & Sciop.* l. 3. c. 5.

Note 2.

Refert is rarely found with a Genitive of the Person or Thing, and therefore we ought rather to say, *interest*

Re-

Reipublica or *salutis*, than *refert Reipub.* or *refert salutis*. Tho' *refert* has a Genitive of the person sometimes, as *Faciendum est quod illorum, magis quam sua retulisse videretur*, *Sal. Jug. c. 111.* *Sed plurimum refert compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas*, *Quint. Instit. l. 9. c. 4.* *Nihil iniquitatis referre existimans, exigas an constituas*, *Plin. Paneg.*

Refert sometimes turns its Genitive ^{Note 3.} into a Dative; as *Dic quid referat intra Naturæ fines viventi jugera centum, an Mille ariet?* *Hor. l. 1. Sat. 1.*

Proper Names of *Islands*, as well as ^{On Id. 8.} *Towns* are sometimes rendred by a Genitive. Thus we read *Creta*, in *Crete*, *Cypri*, at *Cyprus*, *Britannia*, in *Britain*, in *Cæs. Lemni*, at *Lemnos*, in *Ter.* And sometimes whole Countries, as *Ægypti*, in *Ægypt*. *Val. Max. l. 4.* *Tacitus* has put also the Name of a River in the Genitive, *Ann. l. 2.* *Classis Amisæ relicta*. But of these two last Observables Instances are rare.

Nor do Authors constantly observe ^{Note 2.} this Rule even in the Case of Proper Names of *Towns*, especially where it is as much as *nigh* to; as *Tac. Ann. l. 4.* *Capto apud Fidenam amphitheatro. so Vir. Æn. 1.* *Prima quod ad Trojam pro charis gesserat Argis*, at or *nigh Troy*. *Pontem ad Genevam rescindi jubet*, *Cæs. B. G. l. 1.*

Some-

On id. 9. Sometimes *domo* is used instead of *domi*, as *Abde domo*, Virg. Geor. l. 3. *Si quid opus fuerit, heus domo me, sc. invenies.* Ter. Phorm. 2. 3. *Nam ego vel nunc ex-
superior domo.* Plaut. Amph. 2. 2. Especially if it signifies *House* not *Home*, as *Tempestivius in domo Pauli commessabere*, Hor. Od. 1. 1. 4.

Note 3. So *Humo* is used sometimes instead of *humi*; as *Figat humo plantas*, Virg. Geor. l. 4. *Et jacuit resupinus humo*, Ovid. Met. l. 4. v. 121. *Lapsus humo*, Stat. 2. Theb. v. 647. *Plura in humo innoxia cadebant*, Curt. But especially if it have an Adjective joined with it, as *In solida moriens ponere corpus humo*, Ov. de Trist. El. 2. *Fusus humo gelida*, Stat. Theb. 1.

Note 4. Sometimes *terra* and *vicinia* are used in the same manner as *humi* is. Thus Ovid. Met. l. 2. *Maxima cum vellet terra procumbere quasta est.* and Plautus Bac. 2. 2. *Proxima vicinia habitat.*

Note 5. *In War* is always rendred by the Ablative *Bello*, except when *domi* comes either just before it or just after it; as *Animus belli ingens, domi modicus*, Sal. Jug. c. 63. And sometimes not then if *domi* stands last, as *Ut publicis pariter ac privatis consiliis bello domique interesset.* Liv.

Duelli is used as *Belli* is, Plaut. Asin. 3. 2. *Qua domi duellique male fecisti.*

Terence

Terence has indeed used *belli* without *domi*, Heaut. 1. 1. *Simul rem & gloriam armis belli reperi.* which some Annotators say is put for *in bello*; yet being but a single Instance is better made out to be the latter Substantive to *armis*.

Besides the Genitives *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, Note 6. &c. we find *domi* sometimes joyn'd to the Genitive Case of the Owner, tho' in that Case it signifies rather *house* than *home*; as *Clodius deprehensus est domi Caesaris.* Cic.

The Ellipsis before *domi* is supposed The Ellipsis explained. to be *in aedibus*, in the Rooms; before *humis*, *solo*. by which Word *solo* understood, Grammarians make out that Sentence in *Sal. Jug. c. 48. Collis vestitus oleastro, ac myrtetis, aliisque generibus arborum, qua humi arido & arenoso gignuntur, scil. solo.* in some late Editions, this Passage is turned into *humo arida & arenosa*. I suppose from the Difficulty of making out the Grammar. Before *belli* and *militia* is supposed to be understood *tempore*.

NOTES on Chap. IV.

On Substantives put in Apposition.

Apposition is either immediate; Prin. Rule.
when two or more Substantives Note 1,
come together belonging to the same
M Person

Of Apposition.

Person or Thing without any other Word between; as *Marcus Tullius Cicero*. *Effodiuntur opes irritamenta matorum*. Ovid. Met. l. 1. Or else mediate; when two Substantives come together belonging to the same Person or Thing, but so as a Verb Neuter or Passive or their Participles come between; as *Ast ego quæ divum incedo Regina*, Virg. Æn. 1. *Infantem appellatam Juliam Drusillam Minervæ gremio imposuit*, Suet. Calig. c. 2.

Note 2.

After Verbs of Calling or Naming, the Name given is sometimes used as such, without Respect to its Signification, and then it is sometimes put in the Nominative Case, tho' it stands in Apposition to an Accusative; *Templum quod Tanfana vocabant*, Tac. l. 1. for *Tansanas*. *Lactea nomen habet*, Ov. Met. l. 1. v. 169. *Cui fecimus aurea nomen*, Id. Met. l. 15. v. 96. *Unus erat toto natura vultus in orbe, Quem dixere Chaos rudis indigestaq; moles*. Id. Met. l. 1. where *Chaos* is not of the same Case with *quem*, but of the Nominative, otherwise it had been *molem*, not *moles*. Our Saviour has imitated this Way of Speaking, *John* 13. 13.

Τίς ἐσὶς ποιεῖς με ὁ διδάσκαλος, καὶ ὁ κύριος.

Note 3.

Sometimes the Name given is used in the Vocative; as *Pers. Sat. 3. v. 29.*

Conferre tuum vel quod Trabeate salutas.

So Horace lib. 2. Od. 20. Non ego quem

amicum vel quod Trabeate salutas.

Person 1A

quem vocas, dilecte, Mecenas, obibo.

If the Word *Nomen* comes before *est*, Note 4. or follows the Verbs *do*, *indo*, *facio*, together with a Dative Case of the Person; 'tis usual among Authors to put the Epithet, or Name following, not in the Case of *Nomen*, to which it belongs by Apposition, but in the Case of the Person, namely the Dative;

As *Quod tibi nomen insano posuere*, Hor. l. 1. Sat. 3. *Faustulo ei fuisse nomen ferunt*, Liv. l. 1. *Puer cui nomen erat Servio Tullio*. Id. l. 1. *Cui nunc cognomen Iulo*, Virg. *Æn.* 1. *Gelasimo nomen tibi indidit parvo pater*, Plaut. Stich. 1. 3. *Furionis nomen indidit scorto mihi*. Id. Capt. 1. 1. *Ei profecto nomen fasio Illo*. Id. Bacc. 4. 9. *Furventis nomen fecit Peniculo mihi*, Id. Men. 1. 1. *Ei Manlio cognomentum factum est Torquato*, A. Gell. 9. 12.

If the proper Name of a Town having *at* or *in* before it be rendred in Latin by the Genitive Case, and the Common Name *Town*, *City* or *Place* follow it, tho' these Common Names seem to be of the same Case by Apposition, as belonging to the same Thing; yet they shall not be so rendred in Latin, but by the Ablative; as *Primum Antiochia (nam ibi natus est) loco nobili & celebri quondam*, Cic. pro Arch. *Alba constiterunt, in urbe opportuna*, Plin.

The Preposition *in* seems to be understood in this Case, as in that of Terence

Andr. 1. 5. *Te isti virum do*, is as much as *in virum*,

Virgil has omitted the Preposition in even without Apposition, and before the bare design of an Action, *Æn. 9. v. 486. Nec te tua funera mater produxi*, for *in tua funera*.

Note 2.

This Accusative after *for* or *as*, is in some particular Phrases turned into a Dative, namely, when *donum* or *munus* comes after *do*, *mitto*, *fero*, *emo*, *accipio*; and when *arrhabo*, *pignus*, *scenus*, *laus*, *honor*, *gloria*, *vitium*, *culpa*, *crimen*, come after *do*; and when *laus*, *honor*, *gloria*, *vitium*, or *damnum*, come after *duco*; and when *vitium* or *stultitia* come after *verto*.

As *Matri puellam dono mercator dedit*, *Ter. Eun. 1. 1. Pausanias propinquos tuos tibi munera misit*, *Corn. N. p. Pausan. Candelabrum quod rex Egypti Fovi Capitolino dono tulerat*, *Cic. Emit eam dono mihi*, *Ter. Eun. 1. 2. Siquidem tunc tuam puellam muneri accepisset*, *Sueton. Claud. 36. Quadraginta etiam dedit huc usque pignori*, *Plaut. Mostel. Idem pecuniam, his qui ab isto aliqua mercabantur, scenori dabat*, *Cic. ver. 4. Tu id in me reprehendis, quod Quinto Metello laudi datum est*, *Cic. pro Planc. Quam rem vitio dene quaesivimus adverte*, *Ter. Profecto te intelliges inopia criminum summam laudem Sexto Roscio vitio & culpa dedisse*, *Cic. pro Rosc. Rubrio crimini dabatur, volatrum perjurio nomen Augusti*, *Tac. Ann. 1. 9. Tu mihi tibi laudi duci, quod tunc fecisti inopia*, *Ter. Adelph. 1. 2. Quod apud Numidas honori ducitur*, *Sal. Jug. Cum ea culpas quæ in historiis gloria mihi ducis*, *Cic. in Sal. Gloria quoque hoc tibi assignavit*, *Aul. Gell. 1. 11. c. 9. Vos eritis iudices laudi an vitio duci*

factum oporteat, Ter. Adel. Prol. *Minusque ut mihi damno ducam*, Plaut. Bac. 3. 1. *Quis erit vitio qui id non verbat tibi*, Plaut. Epid. *Neque pot tibi nos quia serups equum-frustula vertere*, Id. Capt. *Disputus est me omnia bona doli dixisse illi*, Ter. Heaut. 5. 1. *An te pones veneri jentaculo?* Plaut. Curc. 1. 1. but this rather signifies the End. Vid. Chap. 5. Princ. Rule, Note 1.

Habeo also in some particular Phrases on Id. 1. is used in the like manner instead of *sum*, as when for *es mihi contemptui*, *sum tibi documento*, we say with Cicero, *Habeo te contemptui*. *Habes me ipsum documento*.

This Use *habeo* has also when these Dative Cases follow it. viz. *Cura*, Plaut. *Derelictui*, A. Gell. 4. 12. *Odio*, *despicatui*, Plaut. *Frustratui*, Id. *Ludibrio*, Liv. *Mora*, Plaut. *Questui*, Cæf. 3. B. G. *Religioni*. Cic. de divin. *Studio*, Ter. Adel. 3. 4. *Cordi*, A. Gell. 18. 7. *Divisiui*, Id. 20. 1. *Ludificatui*, Plaut. Pcen. 5. 5.

NOTES on Chap. V.

The Rule of the Dative Case.

THE Particles *to* or *for* are sometimes rendred by a Dative, when they signifie onely the End or Purpose, instead of an Accusative with *in* or *ad*. See Prep. For Fig. 13. *As Hortos suos ei spectaculo Nero obtulerat*, Tac. Ann. 15. c. 44. *Postquam Lacedamonii subsidio venirent*, C. Nep. *Tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit*, Cæf. B. G. l. 1. c. 52.

Princ. Rule,
Note 1.

The

Note 2.

The Adjective *good* or *fit* is often omitted in *Latin* before its *Dative*, especially before *esui*, *potui* or *usui*; as *Cato* *Elío placuisse quæ esui tantum & potui forent*, *A. Gell.* 4. 1. *Quæ sunt annuo usui*, *Id. ibid.* i. 6. *Quæ forent apta esui*, &c. *good* or *fit* for eating. *Quæ sunt apta usui*.

Note 3.

Authors are not so strict Observers of this Rule, but that they vary from it in many Particulars, thus

Particular

1.

Some Adjectives notwithstanding the Sign *to* after them, yet are found with a *Genitive* instead of a *Dative*. The Instances are these.

Instance 1.

Affinis, privy or accessory to; *alienus*, averse or disagreeable to; *amicus*, friendly; *communis*, common; *infrequens*, insolent; *insolitus*, insuetus, unaccustomed to; *proprius*, proper; *sacer*, sacred.

*affinis**alienus**amicus**communis**infrequens**insolens**insolitus**insuetus**proprius*

As *Hujus sceleris affines*, *Auth. ad Heren.* *Alienus consilii*, *Sal. B. C.* 41. *Plato veritatis homo amicissimus*, *A. Gell.* 10. 22. *Commune animantium omnium est conjunctionis appetitus*, *Cic.* *Non usque adeo infrequens sum vocum Latinarum*, *A. Gell.* 12. 24. *Ruris colendi insolens*, *Id.* 19. 12. *Pars insolita rerum bellicarum timere libertati*, *Sal. Jug.* 43. *Insuetus laboris*, *Cæs.* 1. 7. *B. G.* *Quæ est propria nostræ questionis*, *Cic. pro Mil.* in which Case *proprius* is sometimes omitted, as *Cæs.* 1. 4. *B. G.* *Neque suæ, neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat*, *Proper* to the Dignity, &c. [so we say, *Non est hujus loci neq; temporis*, It is not proper to this Time and Place.] *Sacrum liberi Cupidinis*, *Hor. Epod.* 18. *Neptuni sacro Danaû de poste re-fixam*, *Virg. Æn.* 5.

sacer

Ad-

Adversus, equus, iniquus, fidus, supplex, Inst. 2. are found sometimes in Authors with a Genitive, tho' much more rarely than the former.

As *Lepida illustrium domuum adversa*, Tac. *adversus* Ann. l. 1. *Atque interim posse Paribos absentium equos, presentibus mobiles ad penitentiam mutari, equus* Id. Ann. l. 6. *Asinio Pollioni & quibusdam aliis Caii Salsustii iniquis dignum nota visum est*, A. Gell. *iniquus* 10. 26. *Præterea regina tui fidissima dextra Occidit fidus ipsa sua*, Virg. *Æn.* 12. *Tu sollicitum, supplexque supplex tui numinis Argos sola tueris*, Sen. *Tro. Act.* 2.

Adjectives signifying Nearness, as *Finitimus*, *vicinus*, *conterminus*; and Adjectives signifying Likeness or Unlikeness, as *Similis*, *dissimilis*, *par*, *amulus*, *contrarius*, *diversus*, do all turn their Dative sometimes into a Genitive.

As *Chalybes fluvii hujus finitimi appellati*, Just. *finitimus* l. 44. *Qui jusjurandum violat, is Fidem violat, quam in Capitolio vicinam Jovis optimi maximi majores nostri esse voluerunt*, Cic. *Offic.* 2. *Sed cum primum contermini jugi conterminos locos appulit*, Apul. *Met.* l. 6. *Domini similis es*, Ter. *Eun.* *At fortuna superiorum similis temporum dissimilis Euphranorem prosequabatur*, Hirt. *dissimilis* B. Alex. *Quem metuis par hujus erat*, Luc. *Sidus par Veneris æmulum Solis & Luna*, Plin. *Vitia sunt viræ æmulum tutum contraria*, Cic. *de fin.* *Quæ mihi optimum contrarium factu duxerim, diversum ejus alii suasisse*, A. Gell. *diversus* 1. 3.

To these we should add *Superstes*, ont. Inst. 4. living, which, tho' without the Sign *to*, has always after it a Dative, unless when it changes it into a Genitive, which it often does.

superstes

As *Pomponius Tiberio superstes fuit*, Tac. Ann. 1. 5. *Unam te non solum vitæ, sed etiam dignitatis meæ superstitem reliquissem*. Cic. ad Q. fr. 1. 1. Ep. 3. *Felicem Priamum vocabat quod superstes omnium suorum extitisset*. Suet. Ner. 62. And all this is either in Imitation of the Greeks, or by Virtue of a Substantive Signification in the Adjective.

Partic. 2.

Some Adjectives change their Dative into an Accusative, with or without *ad*; and some into an Ablative with *a*; the Instances are these;

Inst. 1.

Propior and *Proximus* change their Dative into an Accusative, with or without *ad*, or an Ablative with *a*.

*propior**proximus*

As *alter quo propior hostem in vallo collocatus esset*. Hirt. *In dextro latere quod proximum hostes erat*. Sal. Jug. c. 49. *Proximus ad dominum nullo prohibente sedebam*. Ovid. *Quotidie propius ab ultimo stamus*. Sen. Epist. 121. *Stellæ aliæ propius a terris moventur*. Cic. de nat. Deor. *Proximum a diis immortalibus honorem memoriæ ducum præstitit, qui imperium Populi Romani ex minimo maximum reddidissent*, Suet. in vita Augusti, cap. 31.

Inst. 2.

Abhorrens, *alienus*, *assuetus*, turn their Dative into an Ablative with *a*; but *alienus* sometimes without *a*.

*abhorrens**alienus**assuetus*

As *Sermocinatio a Latine lingvæ studio non abhorrens*, A. Gell. 19. 3. Not disagreeable to. *Non alienus a Scævola studiis*. Cic. *Quæ videbantur Prosæ orationis usû alieniora*. A. Gell. 19. 7. *Ita illi assuetæ sanguine & prædæ aves pollicebantur*. Vid. Flor. Delph. 1. 1. c. 1. and A. Gell. 7. 2. has *melius serviusque ad aures*.

Inst. 3.

Adjectives signifying Fitness, as *Appositus*, *aptus*, *idoneus*, *habilis*, *commodus*, *utilis*,

utilis, and the Contraries, *incommodus*, *inutilis*; and *necessarius*, *necessary*, and *natus*, *born*, change their Dative signifying the Use or Purpose into an Accusative with *ad*. So does *pronus*, *promptus*, *proclivis* and *assuetus*.

As *Homo bene appositus ad istius audaciam*, Cic. *appositus* 7. in Ver. *Instruar etiam consiliis idoneis ad hoc negotium*, Cic. ad Att. 1. 15. *Caloris Sicyonis non uterer, quamvis essent habiles & apti ad pedem*, Cic. de orat. *Hispano cingitur gladio ad propiorem habili pugnam*, Liv. 1. 7. *Pomponius vir habilis ad omnia summa natus*, Cic. de clar. orat. *Nome natus igitur sapiens, si fame ipsa conficiatur, abstulerit cibum alteri homini ad nullam rem utili*, Cic. Offic. *utilis* 1. 3. *Quod & acutum genus est, & ad usus civium inutilis non inutile*, Id. de fin. *Cetera quæ sunt ad vitam necessarii necessaria*, Id. *Ad omne nefas pronus*, Luc. *Ad pronus horrida promptior arma*, Ovid. Met. 1. 1. *Proclivis ves ad libidinem*, Ter. Andr. 1. 1. *Assuetæ ad proclivis scepera manus*, Sen. *assuetus*

Gravis turns its Dative into an Accusative with *in*; so does *dissimilis*. *Gratus* has one, with *adversum*, *in* or *erga*. As *Postremo Livia gravis in Rempublicam*, Tac. Ann. 1. 1. *Nam ætate & forma non dissimili in dominum fuit*, Id. Ann. 1. 2. *Id gratum fuisse adversum te habeo gratiam*, Ter. Andr. 1. 1. *Irati in vulgus*, Tac. *Gratus erga aliquem*, Plin.

Verbs of Applying, exhorting, provoking, forcing, inviting, calling, belonging, and Verbs of Motion, and Loquor, I speak, have rather an Accusative with *ad* than a Dative. *Note 3.*

In like Manner we say, *Refero ad Senatum*, rather than *Senatui*. *Do ad te Literas*, I send a Letter to you. *Do tibi Literas*, I send a Letter by you. *Scribo* and *mitto* govern either a Dative or an Accusative. *Confido* takes either a Dative or an Ablative, and once in *Statius* an Accusative. As *Confidebant naturâ loci*. *Cæs. B. G. l. 3. Fidens pecuniâ. C. Nep. Martisque ex semine Theron Terrigenos confisus avos. Stat. 2. Theb. v. 573.* And indeed most Verbs with *to* after them, do sometimes turn their Dative into an Accusative with *ad*.

nuncio Thus we read, *Quæ nunciare te volo ad patrem*, *Plaut. Capt. 2. 3. Re nunciatâ ad suos, Cæs. B. G. l. 2. Auchises qui hæc dicit ad filiam, A. Gell. 2. 16. Divitiis ager vix tenuem ad gressus meos semitam dabat, Quint. Dec. 7. Datque animum in luctus, Ov. Met. l. 2. v. 384. Ad currum equos jungere, Plin. Quam me ad illam promittere, Plaut. Stich. 4. 1. Structuram ad perpendicularum*

dico *respondere oportet, Plin. Ad quas nec mens, nec corpus, nec dies ipsa sufficeret, Quint. Nec mirari oportet hunc ordinem ad institutum ab servio Tullio*

do *summam non convenire, Liv. l. 1. Convenit ad eum hæc contumelia, Cic. Conveniebat in tuam vaginam machæra militis, Plaut. Conducunt hæc ad ventris vitium, Id. Quod in rem rectè conducatur tuam, Id. Capt. 2. 3.*

jungo, promitto

respondeo

sufficio

convenio

conduco

Note 4. Of the Verbs that require a Dative, those that are active govern an Accusative of the Thing, at the same time that they require a Dative of the Person.

son. And some of them can vary that Accusative into an Ablative.

And when they do so, then the Dative is varied into an Accusative.

As I give this Gift to you, *Dono tibi hoc munus.*
 I present you with this Gift, *Dono te hoc munere.*
 Agreeably the Latins say, *Impertio tibi plurimam impertio salutem;* and *Impertis te plurimā salutē.* *Instravis instravo equo penulam;* or *equum penula.* *Asperfit mihi la-* aspergo *hem;* or *me labe.* *Prohibere alicui domum;* or *ali-* prohibeo *quem domo.* *Inducite fontibus umbras,* Virg. or *induco inducite fontes umbra,* Id. Ec. 9. *Circundat urbi circumdo fossam;* or *urbem fossa.* *Intercludo comineatum ini-* intercludo *micis;* or *comineatibus inimicos.*

And sometimes this Variation of the Note 5. Dative into an Accusative, and the Accusative into an Ablative, is most elegant. Thus *munero* or *muneror te hoc premio,* is better than *tibi hoc premium.* *Me laudibus cumulasti,* than *mihi laudes.*

Only *interdico* keeps its Dative, even Note 6. when the Accusative is turned into an Ablative. As *Interdixit Romanis omnem Galliam,* or *Romanis omni Gallia.* So Cæsar, B. G. l. 1.

The Substantive *Respect* has always to Obs. 1. after it in English, instead of the Particle *of*, yet is never rendred by a Dative, but has always a Genitive after it if rendred by *Ratio*, or an Accusative with *ad*, if rendred by *Respectus*. As *Debere se sue salutis rationem habere,* Cæf.

Bell. Civ. l. 1. That he ought to have Respect to his own Safety. *Cum respectum ad Senatum, & ad bonos mores non haberet, eam sibi viam ipse patefecit ad opes suas amplificandas, quam virtus liberi populi ferre non posset, Cic.*

Note 2. This Genitive, the latter of two Substantives, is sometimes turn'd into a Dative, even when the Particle of cannot be turn'd into *to*; especially when the former Substantive expresses some Part or Appurtenance of the latter. As *Utque mos vulgo*, Tac. Ann. l. 1. And as is the way of the common People. *Hand secus accenso gliscit violentia Turno*, Virg. Æn. 12. *Kidin' ego te modo manum in sinum huic meretrici inferere?* Ter. Heaut. 3. 3. *Nisi forte in ventrem filio correxerit*, Plaut. Trinum. 2. 4. *Perq; os Elephantio brachium transmitteres*, Plaut. Mil. l. 1.

On Obs. 3. There are three Verbs to be added to this Rule to make it compleat, and those are, *to answer*; *to defend* rendred by *paradoinon*; *to bless*, by *benedico*.

Note 2. *Adjuvo* takes a Dative of the Person, as often as it has an Accusative of the Thing. Thus A. Gell. 2. 29. *Ut messem hanc nobis adjuvent*, That they may help us in with this Harvest. So *adjuvo* in Terence, Hec. 3. 2. *Tu pueris curre Parmeno obviam, atque iis onera adjuta.*

Impero

Impero and *Jubeo* sometimes signify *Note 3.*
to demand or enjoyn, and then they
both alike require a Dative and an Ac-
cusative: Nay, *Jubeo* is sometimes
found with a Dative alone, when it sig-
nifies to command as a Superior. *Inser-
vio*, though a Verb of obeying, is often
found in *Plautus* with an Accusative;
and so is *parco*, to spare, and *solvo*, to
pay; *minor* has an Accusative with *in*,
Virg. Æn. 1. but then it seems to sig-
nifie the same with *eminere*. *Medicor*
has an Accusative in *Plautus*. *Con dono*
has sometimes an Accusative of the
Person as well as of the Crime, or
Debt; *Ignosco* has sometimes an Accu-
sative of the Crime, but never of the
Person, nor is it ever found with an
Accusative of the Crime, together
with a Dative of the Person, unless the
Crime be exprest by some Pronoun, as
hoc, illud, id, quod, &c. *Prospicio*, to
take care of, has an Accusative some-
times; and so has *Indulgeo*, *invideo*, and
grator, to congratulate, as also *adulo*,
and *palpo*, to flatter.

As *Hic Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta, Cæs. impero*
B. G. l. 5. *Provinciæ toti quam maximum milium*
numerum imperat, Id B. G. l. 1. *Tributum his*
Drusus jussu erat modicum, Tac. Ann. 4. *Ubi Bri- jubeo*
tannico jussit, exsurgeret. Id. Ann. 17. *Et tergam*
nille equites tuebantur, quibus jussu erat ne instantibus
cominus resisterent, Id. Ibid. Thus *Cæsar B. C.*
l. 3.

- inservio* 1. 3. *Militibusque suis jussit ne qui eorum violarentur.* *Matronæ non meretricium est unum inservire amanti,* Plaut. Mostel. 1. 3. *Si illum inservibis solum,* Id. ibid. *Ego ad forum hinc ibo, ut solvam militem,* Id. Bac. 4. 9. *Nisi eam (pecuniam) mature parcat, esurit,* Id. Curc. 3. 1. *Vitam modo sibi ut parceret oravisse* A. Gell. 16. 19. *Geminique minantur* In calum scopuli, Virg. Æneid. 1. *Ego istum lepide uedicabor metum,* Plaut. Mostel. 2. 2. *Con dono te,* Plaut. Bac. 5. 2. *Condonare peccatum,* Sal. *Condonare pecuniam debitoribus,* Cic. *Argentum quod habes condonamus te,* Ter. Phorm. 5. 7. *Scilicet istud factum ignosciam,* Ter. Heaut. 4. 1. *Hoc tibi vel poterit conjux ignoscere funo,* Propert. 6. 21. *Malo ego nos prospicere.* Ter. Eun. 4. 6. *Nimis me indulgeo,* Ter. Eun. 2. 1. *Troadas invideo,* Ovid. *Gratatur reduces,* Virg. Æn. 5. *Adulans omnes,* Cic. *Quem munere palpat Carus,* Juven. Sat. 1. v. 35.
- solvo*
- parco*
- minor*
- medicor*
- condono*
- ignosco*
- prospicio*
- indulgeo*
- invideo*
- grator, adulator, palpo*

Note 4. *Vinco, supero, and supergredior, to excel, take only an Accusative.*

Note 5. To these Verbs that govern a Dative without the Sign *to*, are added usually *renuncio, to renounce*, which has always a Dative of the Person, but sometimes an Accusative of the Thing; And *despero*, which sometimes turns its Dative into an Accusative, sometimes into an Ablative, with or without *de*. Also *Lateo, deficio, tempero, moderor, preestor, abrogo, and plaudo*; all which sometimes turn their Dative into an Accusative, and therefore not so necessary to be mentioned in the Rule.

renuncio

As Svoicis renuncio, Cic. de Orat. Civilibus officiis, Quint. Renunciare conditionem, Cic. Hospitium

glum alieni, Id. Desperare salutem, Id. Pacem, Id. despero
 Fortunis suis, Cæs. B. G. l. 3. Latet mihi causa, Jateo
 Luc. Nec latuere doli fratrem Junonis, Virg. Tela
 nostris deficerent, B. G. l. 3. Eos res frumentaria deficio
 deficere capit, Id. B. G. l. 2. Vix temperare an-tempero
 mæ, Liv. Gallica nec lupatis temperat ora frenis,
 Hor. l. 1. Od. 8. Animo & orationi moderari, Cic. moderor
 Cantus, numerosq; arbitrio multitudinis moderari, Id.
 Qui tibi ad forum Aurelium præstolarentur armati, Id. præstolor
 Hujus adventum Cæsar præstolans, Cæs. B. C. l. 2.
 Ubi duæ contrariæ leges, semper antiquæ abrogat abrogo
 novæ, Liv. Ut legem Semproniam abrogaverit, Cic.
 Plaudo victorem, Stat. Mibi plaudo, Hor. Sat. 1. plaudo
 l. 1. Curo did anciently govern a Dative, as
 well as *prospicio* or *consulo*. Therefore we find
 in *Plautus*, *Meis curavi amicis*, Stich 5. 3.

Tacitus sometimes uses *suppeditat* in *on* Id. 1.
 this Case instead of *suppetit*; as l. 15.
 p. 327. *Obsessis adeo suppeditavisse rem
 frumentariam*, That the besieged had such
 Plenty of Corn.

To this Rule belongs *cordi est*, for *on* Id. 2.
placet; as *Diis pietas mea & Musa cordi
 est*, Hor: l. 1. Od. 17. *Ant tibi si nuptia
 hæ sunt cordi*, Ter. Andr. 2. 1.

There are other Verbs used with a *Note 2.*
 double Dative besides *est*. Gramma-
 rians commonly reduce them to these
 Six, *forem*, *do*, *duco*, *cedo*, *habeo*, *verto*.
 But then they are used so but in some
 particular Phrases.

As *Quæ bello usui forent*, Sal. Which were useful
 for the War. *Camillo crimini objecit*, Liv. He laid
 to Camillus's Charge. *Lucro ei cedit ea res*, Pomp.
 That thing turns to his Advantage. (for which some-
 times

times an Ablative with *pro* ; as *Illæ fama pro bono cessit*, Suet. Flav. 7.) *Quas (legiones) C. Fabius subsidio urbi miserat*, Cæf. Sent to the Relief of the City. *Sex cohortes castris præsidio reliquit*, Id. He left six Cohorts to garrison the Camp. For *do, duo, habeo, verto*, and others, see Note 1. of this Chap. and on *Ellip.* 2. Note 2. and on *Idiom* 1. of the foregoing Chapter.

On Id. 3.

The Ablat.
of the Doer
without a
Preposit.

This *By* after Verbs Passive, though sometimes a Sign of the Dative, is most commonly rendred by an Ablative with *a* or *ab* (see Prep. *By*, Fig. 3.) and being sometimes considered as signifying the Cause, is found without its Preposition, and is particularly remarkable in *Ovid*. Thus *de Trist. Eleg. 1. Me reor infesto cum tonat igne peti*. And again *Eleg. 5. Te mea, supposita veluti trabe sulta ruina est*. And again *Metam. l. 1. Nunc Dea linigera colitur celeberrima turba*.

Likewise after Participials and Verbals in *bilis* ; as *Uno comitatus Achate*, Virg. *Æn. 1. Nimbisque Aquilone remotis*, *Ovid. Met. l. 1. Dicam insigne recens intactum ore alio*, *Hor. l. 3. Od. 25. Cuncta virtute inexpugnabilia*, *Tac. Ann. lib. 12.*

Participles of Verbs Passive take often a Dative, and Verbal Adjectives in *dius* and *bilis*, and *pervius* take rather a Dative than an Ablative ; as *Ut nulli pervia flamme Subtexit nox atra polos*, *Stat. Thebæd. l. 1.*

Only

Only one, namely, *pertasus*, is sometimes found with neither, but instead of it, either an Accusative, as *Quasi pertasus ignaviam suam*, Suet. Jul. c. 7. which seems to have *propter*, or some such Preposition understood; for it is sometimes found with its Dative or Ablative, as well as other Participial Adjectives. Thus Suet. Tib. c. 67. *Pertasus talis epistola principio*. Tacitus has used it with a Genitive, Ann. l. 15. *Lentitudinis eorum pertasa*, being the Case of *tader*, whence it is derived.

The Verbs of agreeing that are found with a Dative, are these; *Assentior, concordo, consentio, convenio, acquiesco*.

Of differing or disagreeing are; *Differo, discordo, discrepo, dissentio, dissideo, disto, degenero*.

Of contending are; *Certo, bello, pugno, manum confero, bellum facio*.

Of taking away are; *Abstineo, abstraho, abduco, adimo, arceo, aufero, aufugio, decedo, defendo, defluo, labor, delabor, demo, derogo, detraho, eripio, excutio, eximo, expedio, exseco, extorqueo, exuo, furor, liquor, pello, rapio, surripio, subtrabo, subduco, tolo*.

As *Mibi est assensus senatus de obtinendis provinciis*, Cic. Per me concordant carmina nervi, Ov. *concordo* Met. l. 1. *Consentio tibi*, Cic. *Conveniet nulli, consentio qui secum dissidet ipse*, Cat. Dist. *Quibus etiam post eum principes acquieverunt*, Suet. Flav. c. 7. *acquiesco*

différo	<i>Nisi quod pede certo differt sermone sermo merus, Hor. l. 1. sat. 4.</i>
discrepo	<i>Scire volo quantum simplex hilarisque nepoti discrepet, & quantum dastordes parens avaro, Hor. l. 2. Ep. 2.</i>
discredo	<i>Ne oratione vita disseuiat, Sen. Dissidens plebi, Hor. l. 2. Od. 2.</i>
disfideo	<i>Infido scurra distabit amicus, Id. l. 1. Ep. 18.</i>
disco	<i>Et mari non de- genere paterno, Stat. 1. Theb. v. 464.</i>
de genero	<i>Solus certo bello tibi certet Amyntas, Virg. Ec. 5.</i>
pugno	<i>Magno bellare po- teui, Stat. Theb. l. 8.</i>
manum	<i>Placidone etiam pugnabis amori, Virg. Aen. 4.</i>
confero	<i>Sat conferre manum Aeneæ, Virg. Aen. 12. v. 678.</i>
bellum fa-	<i>Qui bellum patriæ fecisset, Tac. Ann. l. 3.</i>
cio, molior	<i>Bellum patriæ faciet, Cic. pro Mil. Agis bellum Antipatro moliebatur, Curt. l. 4.</i>
abstineo	<i>Abstine isti hanc tu manum, Plaut. Cist. 4. 2.</i>
abstrabo	<i>Abstine isti hanc tu manum, Plaut. Cist. 4. 2.</i>
abduco	<i>parvo decori abstrabi, Tac. Ann. l. 2. c. 26.</i>
adimo	<i>Ne- roni abducta uxor, Id. Ann. l. 1.</i>
arceo, au-	<i>Senatori latum clavum ademisti, Suet. Ner. 35.</i>
fero, aufu-	<i>Hunc quoque arce- bis pavidio pecori, Virg. Georg. 3.</i>
ter, Ter.	<i>Aufer mihi opor- thorm. 1. 4.</i>
gio, decedo	<i>Qua ausugit quadam nescio Plaut. Cist. 4. 2.</i>
	<i>illi decedere pravam stultitiam, Hor. l. 2. Ep. 2.</i>
defendo	<i>Nec sera meminit de- cedere nostri, Virg. Ec. 8.</i>
defluo	<i>like that Passage of Ta- citus, Ann. l. 2. c. 21.</i>
labor	<i>Famq; sero diei subducit ex acie legionem. Solstitium pecori defendite, Virg. Ec. 7.</i>
delabor	<i>Antequam teneræ defluat succus præta, Hor. l. 2. Od. 2.</i>
demo	<i>Regium capiti decus bis terque lapsum est, Sen. Thy. A. Act. 4.</i>
derogo	<i>Serta procul tantum capiti delapsa jacebant, Virg. Ecl. 6.</i>
derabo	<i>Authoritatem pecu- nia demito, Sal. Orat. 2. de Rep. ord.</i>
er pio	<i>Quo tu- tela sociorum nihil derogetur, nobis opinio decedat, Tac. Ann. l. 15.</i>
ex utio	<i>O. at. Pæti. Chæreane tuam ve- stem derogasti mihi, Ter. Eun. 4. 4.</i>
eximo	<i>Pudicitiam cum eriperet mihi Tribunus, Cic. pro Mil.</i>
expedito	<i>Lachrymas excussit mihi, Ter. Heaut. 1. 1.</i>
extorqueo	<i>M. Pisonem igno- minie exemit, Tac. Ann. l. 3.</i>
exuo	<i>Vix te trifurmi Pe- gys expediet Chimera, Hor. l. 1. od. 27.</i>
	<i>Qui- nas hic capiti mercedes exsecat, Id. l. 5. sat. 2.</i>
	<i>Si prlorum Regum alicui regnum extorsisset, Liv. Fam- dudum vincula pugnas exuere ipse sibi, Ov. Met. l. 2.</i>

Furibus furetur quod quaerit, Plant. Bach. 4. 4. *Nemo furor
furatur alieri*, Plin. N. H. l. 12. c. 14. *Quis arbor
liquantur sanguine guttae*, Virg. Aen. 3. *Nilne pu- liquor
dei capiti non posse pericula cano pelleré*, Pers. Sat. 1. pello
v. 83. *Aut me uxori surripuisse*, Plaut. Men. 3. 2.
Sape periscelidem raptam sibi, Hor. l. 1. Ep. 17. *rapio*
Cui iudicio cum mors subit in, Liv. *Cum subdixi subtrabo*
sti te mihi, Ter. Ban. 4. 7. *Fam ser a diei subduxit subduco*
ex arce Legionem, Tac. Ann. 8. *Dubitationem alicui*
tolle, Cic. *Dum pallam supulas uxori tuae*, Plaut. *tollo, sup-*
Men. 5. 1. *pilo*

The Dative after some of these Verbs is rather too Poetical for Prose, in which these Verbs have often an Ablative with a Preposition; among Poets sometimes, though rarely without. As *Hor. l. 2 Od. 12 Aut facili savitia negat, quae possente magis gaudent eripi.* And *Plaut. Mil. Act. 5. Gestis macho hoc ad- domen adimere.*

Likewise with after *misceo* and *conjungo*, is sometimes rendred by a Dative Case: And contrariwise, to after *habeo* is rendred by an Ablative. As *Patri virum miscui, nocti diem*, Sen. Agam. Act. 1. *Mistus dolori subdidit stimulos timor*, Id. ibid. Act. 2. *Ea summa misera est summo dedecore conjuncta*, Cic. Phil. 3. *Haret pede pes*, Virg. Aen. 9.

With after *idem* is indeed some times found in Authors rendred by a Dative; as *In eundem istis morem*, Just. l. 2. c. 4. *In the same Manner with them.* But it is rare: The usual way is by *idem ac* or *atq;* or *idem quod*.

Note 2.
Verbs of taking away have sometimes an Ablat. without a Prep.

Note 3.
misceo and *conjungo* Dat. bare. an Ablato

Note 4.

Idem cum is reckon'd entirely modern; however we find in *Tacitus Ann* l. 15. in princ. *Hunc ego eodem mecum patre genitum in possessionem Armenia deduxi*

Note 5. *From* after *diversus* and *varius*, different, is indeed rendred by a Dative, but then it is almost peculiar to the Poets. Thus *Horace Epist.* 18. l. 1. *Est huic diversum vitio vitium prope majus.* and *Sat.* 3. l. 2. *Alterum & huic varium.*

Note 6. The same thing is found after *longe* in *Virgil* and *Florus*, *Virg. Æn.* 12. *Longe illi dea mater erat.* *Flor.* l. 2. c. 2. *Longe illis nautica artes.*

On Id. 5. This *with* after the Verb *supply* or *furnish*, is sometimes a Sign of the Ablative after *suppedito*. As *Cicero*, *Orat.* 2. in *Catil.* has, *Quibus nos suppeditamus*, *With which we supply ourselves.* And so *Terence* has used it once, only changing the Accusative of the Person into a Dative, *Heaut.* 5. 1. *Nam si illi pergam suppeditare sumptibus.* But if the Word *supply* or *furnish* be rendred by *instruo*, it commonly takes an Ablative. As *Virg. Æn.* 8. *Socios simul instruit armis*; but sometimes a Dative, as *Aurum, ornamentaque quæ illi instruxisti*, *date*, *Plant. Mil.* 4. 3.

Note 2. There are other Verbs also remarkable for some such Turn of Idiom; namely, *Credo*, *assentior*, *gratulor*, *invideo*, *indulgeo*,

indulgeo, suadeo. Thus Ovid, Met. l. 1. *Matri omnia demens Credis,* You believe your Mother in all things. *Namque ego illud facili assentior Theophrasto,* Cic. I easily agree with Theophrastus in that. *Quæ gratulata illi, sibi que victoriam fuerant,* Just. l. 8. c. 3. Had congratulated him and themselves for his Victory. So *Indulget sibi voluptates,* He indulges himself in Pleasures. *Invidit montibus umbras,* Virg. Ecl. 5. Envied the Mountains for the Shades. *Non hæc sibi littora suavit Delius,* Id. Æn. 3. Did not persuade you to these Shores. Only *indulgeo* sometimes turns its Accusative into an Ablative with *in*, and *gratulor* into an Ablative with *de* or *in*; as *Ætati tuæ mi Tiberi, nol. in hac re indulgere,* Suet. Aug. c. 51. *Gratulor tibi de hac re,* Cic. *In hac re,* Id.

There is one Observation more of Note 3. the Dative Case not to be omitted, and that is, that the Verbs that govern this Case, qualify all their Descendants, both Adjectives and Substantives, to do so too. Hence it is that we find in Virg. Ecl. 9. *Sed non ego credulus illis.* And in Plant. Mil. 3. 1. *Studiosus adulterio.* And in Justin. l. 9. c. 8. *Rex armorum quam conviviorum apparatus studiosior.* And in Horace l. 3. Od. 26 *Oppositis foribus minaces.* And in Ov. Met. l. 1. *Cumque sit ignis aque pugnat.* And in Justin. l. 6.

Atque

Of the Accusative.

*Atque ita velut eratulabundus patria, expro-
ravit. And in Cæsar, B. C. l. i. Is erat
Rivenna expectabatque suis lenissimis postu-
latis responsa. In Cicero, Etsi justitia est
obtemperatio scriptis legibus, institutisque
populorum.*

Note 4. A d to this, that the D tive Case
sibi is sometimes elegantly used, imme-
diately after *mihi*, govern'd indeed of
the foregoing Verb, yet adds nothing
to the Sense, but is used purely for Ele-
gance Sake. As *Suo sibi hunc gladio jugulo,*
Ter. Adelph. 5. 8.

NOTES on Chap. VI.

The Rule of the Accusative Case.

**Princip.
Rule**
a Verb A-
ctive must
have an
Accusative
expressed.

A Verb Active must of Necessity
have an Accusative Case after it,
otherwise the Sentence is imperfect;
As, *The General leads. The Knife divides.
The Artist makes.* Which Sentences want
the Accusative Case to make them en-
tire. As, *The General leads the Army.
The Knife divides the Meat. The Artist
makes Engines.* Unless,

Except the
Sense of
the Verb
shows the
Accusative.

1. The Sense of the Verb directs to
the Accusative Case understood. As,
Cæsar conquered in the Pharsalian Fight;
viz. *his Enemies.* *A Merchant's Business*
is to buy and sell, viz. *Wares or Mercan-*
dizes.

dszes. So edit, sc. cibum, bibit, sc. potum. Cum faciam vitula pro frugibus ipse venito, Virg. sc. sacra. Elephantes decem annos gestare in utero vulgus credit, Plin. sc. foetum.

2. The Accusative Case is some indefinite or undetermined Person. As, He that cheats, flatters, or oppresses, is deservedly reckon'd a Knave. Being reviled, he reviled not again; namely, any body. Qui cupit, aut metuit, juvat illum. Sic domus aut res, ut lippum picta tabula, Hor. sc. qui cupit aut metuit quidvis. Qui amant, graviter sibi ferunt uxorem dari, Ter. sc. quamvis mulierem.

3. The Doer acts upon himself; for then the Word self or selves is often understood; as The greatest Business of a Christian is to prepare for Death, i. e. himself. A proud Woman paints and dresses. I wash. They comb, &c.

As Simul ac ventus posuit, A. Gell. l. 2. c. 30. Et jam nox humida calo Precipitat, sc. se, Virg. Prora avertit, Id. Mores Populi Romani mutant, Liv. Terra movet, Cic. Neque in Britanniam transvexu, Suet. Jul.

And this makes out the Reason, why *vehens* is sometimes used for *vehens*, and *gestans* for *gestans*.

As Ille plaustrum quo vehenti regnum delatum fuerat consecravit, In which being carried, Iustin. In te intuens Brute, doleo, per medios muros quasi quadrigis vehentem, Cic. Velabrum prater.

Of the Accusative.

prateruebens, Suet. Jul. c. 3. *Trajecit* (sc. *se*) *Cyprum Triton natanibus inuebens bellus*, Cic. *Quod novissime simul gestanti inquit*, Suet. Domit. c. 11. for *gestato*; to which if you add *se* the Ellipsis is made up.

Accus. after a Verb Act. commonly supplied by *se*, both in English and Latin. Therefore if you find a Verb Active in English without an Accusative Case, the Ellipsis of which Case can be no way made out consistently but by adding *se*, it is good in Latin, if it be rendred according to the English, without an Accusative; as *The Waves rowl*, *Fluctus volvunt*. *The Clouds gather*, *Nubes cogunt*. *The Earth moves*, *Terra movet*. *se* being understood. But 'ti more agreeable to Prose, to turn the Verb Active into a Verb Passive; as *Fluctus volvuntur*. *Nubes coguntur*. *Terra movetur*. Vide A. Gell. 18. 12.

Acc. after Verbs neut. of a cognitive Signification. 2. None but a Verb Active Transitive is capable of an Accusative Case, unless the Accusative have some cognate Signification with the Verb, and in that Case Verbs Neuters turn Actives, and take an Accusative; as *I walk a Walk*. *You run a Race*. *He goes a Journey*. *We live a Life*. *Sine me furere ante furorem*, Virg. Æn. l. 12. *Consimilem luserat jam alim ille ludum*, Ter. Eun. 3. 5. which Accusative is often turned into an Ablative; as *Obiit mortem* or *morte*, *vitam vivere* or *vita*, Plaut.

But

But sometimes the Word of near Signification is left out, and some particular Word contained under it, is put in its Place. So *Aleam lufit*, Suet. Vita Claud. c. 33. and *lufit par impar*, is as much as *lufit lufum*, nempe *aleam*; or *par impar*. *Canat aves*, Hor. *Canat ostrea*, Juv. is *Canat canam*, nempe *aves*, or *ostrea*. Vid. Hor. l. 2. Sat. 8. v. 27. and Ep. 2. l. 2. v. 168. & Pers. Sat. 8. v. 85.

The Words of near Signification left out, and the Accusative in Apposition put in its Room.

As for *oleo*, to smell of, and *sapio*, to taste of, I rather suppose of to be a Part of their Signification, and then they are Actives. As, *Olet pastillos*, Hor. *Sapit mare*, Plin.

Tho' the former sometimes turns its Accusative into an Ablative, and so is Neuter too, like those in the Third Note. As, *Perque lacus altos & olentia sulphure fertur*, Ovid. Met. l. 5. v. 405. *Redolentque thymo fraorantia mella*, Virg.

Oleo sometimes Active, sometimes Neuter.

Sometimes an Accusative follows a Verb Neuter, but stands for no more than an Adverb. As, *Qui curios simulant & Bacchanalia vivunt*, in Juv. is no more than, *Bacchanaliter vivunt*. *Nec vox hominem sonat*, O Dea, certe, Virg. is no more than, *humanè sonat*.

A Substantive in the Accusative sometimes used for an Adverb.

So *nihil* is often used for *non*; as, Ter. Andr. l. 2. *Nihil ad me attinet*, i. e. *non ad me attinet*.

3. Some Verbs are both Active and Neuter as well in English as in Latin. both Active and Neuter. As, *aud Natus*.

As, Festino, propero, incipio, pascō, spiro, plus, habito, tono, &c. As, Festina lente, Suet. Hasten slowly. Festinate fugam, Virg. Hasten your Flight.

Propero ad filiam, Ter. Pecuniam haredi properat, Hor. Incipit ver, Cic. Incipere facinus, Plaut. Pascunt agni, Virg. Pascere capellas, Id. Equatæ spirant auræ, Id. Tauri spirantes naribus ignem, Id. Dum pluit in terris, Virg. Pluit lapides, Liv. or lapidibus, Id. Habitarunt vallibus imis, Virg. Habitarunt Dii quoque Sylvas, Id. Tonat Ætna ruinis, Virg. Tercentum tonat ore deos, Id.

Especially when they govern either an Accusative or Ablative with de. And such either take an Accusative instead of an Ablative with de.

But this is more particularly remarkable in some Verbs, that take after them either an Accusative or an Ablative Case with *de*, and those are either,

1st. Such as take an Accusative Case instead of an Ablative with *de*; namely, *bibo, cano, censeo, despero, dico, dispero, paciscor, garrio, loquor, pango, queror, sileo, somnio, taceo, triumpho.*

As, Aut Ararim Paribus bibit, aut Germania Tigrim, Virg. Ecl. 1. Arma virumque cano, Id. Æn. 1. Quid censeo munera terræ, Hor. L. 2. Ep. 6. Tradunt Publium Scipionem liberos desperavisse, A. Gell. l. 7. c. 1. Solicitos Galli dicamus honores, Virg. Ecl. 10. Ut hunc rem vobis ex amissim disputem, Plaut. Tantum ab eo vitam paciscatur, Sal. Jug. c. 26. Soleo hercule garrere nugæ, Aul. Aët. 5. Multi etiam Catilinam, & illa portentosa loquebantur, Cic. pro Mil. 333. Nec quæ pepigere recusent, Virg. Æn. l. 12. Queritur crudelitatem regis, Iust. l. 1. c. 10. Neque te silebo liber, Hor. l. 1. Od. 12. Me somniet, Ter. Eun. 1. 2. Neque hoc tacebit Parmeno, Id. Triumphavit Asiæcos, Plin. Jun.

2dly, Such as take an Ablative with Or an Ablative with de, instead of an Accusative; such are, de, instead. Cognosco, comperio, exprobro, memoro, re- of an Accusative. cuso, refero, to propound.

As, Ubi cognoscit de P. Clodii cade, Cæs. B. G. Primum jam de amore hoc comperit, Ter. And. 1. 3. Define de uxore mihi exprobrare, C. Nep. Epam. De qua paulo ante memoravi, Sal. B. C. 27. Iniquum est de stipendio recusare, Cæs. Gall. 1. 1. Quæsitque quâ de re ad Crassum retulisset, Cic. ad Brut.

Lastly, Sometimes the Accusative The Accusative Case is supplied by an Infinitive Mood, supplied by or a whole Sentence. As, Magni aestimabat cantare, Suet. Ner. Claud. 21. an Infinitive, or a whole Sentence. Panitere tanti non emo, A. Gell. 1. 1. c 8. Ex ipsa queras unde hunc habuerit, Ter. Heant. 4. 1.

One of these Ways one may always account for the Absence of an Accusative Case, after a Verb that requires it, and the expressing it after one that does not.

There is indeed in this Rule of Duration of Time, an Ellipsis of a Preposition, which is sometimes express'd in English by the Particle for, and in Latin by per; but being for the most part omitted in both Tongues, I thought proper to reckon this Rule in my Analytalous Syntax; the rather, because notwithstanding the Preposition understood, the Accusative is turn'd into a Nominative. On Obs. 1. The Ellipsis in durations of Time explain'd. The Accusative signifying duration of Time, turn'd into a Nominative.

Nominative, when the Verb is turn'd into a Passive, as it us'd to be when the Accusative follows the Verb. Thus because we say, *Dormio totam hyemem*, therefore says *Martial*, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems*.

often into
an Ablat.

2. This Accusative signifying Duration, is often turn'd into an Ablative.

As, *Imperium Assyrii mille trecentis annis tenere*, Just. l. 1 c. 2. *Fracti bello fatisque repulsi Ductores Danaum tot jam labentibus annis*, Virg. *Æn.* l. 2. the Preposition *in* being understood. Hence

in under-
stood.
ago.

it is that *ago*, in Latin *abhinc*, has sometimes an Accusative, sometimes an Ablative. As, *Abhinc triennium*, Ter.

Abhinc annis quindecim, Cic.

But after
natus al-
ways Ac-
cusative.

3 In this Accusative with *natus*, the Latins commonly express the Age of any Person, and in this Case only are never found to use an Ablative. As, *Sexaginta annos natus es aut plus eo*, Ter. Heaut. l. 1. i. never *annis*. You are Sixty Years old; i. e. have been born Sixty Years.

On Obs 2. This Accusative signifying Distances and Dimensions, is often turned into an Ablative. As, *Ab exploratoribus certior factus est Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passum quatuor & viginti abesse*, Cæs. Gall l. 1. *Fons latus pedibus tribus, altus triginti*, Col. and this by Virtue of the

Prepo-

Preposition *a* understood; which before Distance is several times express'd by *Cæsar*: Thus *L. 1. B. Gall. Positis castris à millibus passuum 15 auxilia Germanorum expectare constituent.* And again, *B. Civ. L. 1. Atque à millibus passuum quinque itinera difficilia, atque angusta excipiebant.*

The General Words, *Distantia*, *Spacium*, and *Intervallum*, are more usually put in the Ablative; as also *Lapis*, Mile: But other Words expressing Distance more commonly in the Accusative.

Columella has express'd Dimensions in the Genitive, as is supposed by an Elipsis of *Mensura*. As, *In morem hortiarum areas latas pedum decem, longas pedum quinquagenum facito*: But 'tis very unusual.

All Verbs of asking don't govern a double Accusative; for *Quæro*, *sciscitor*, *impetro*, *imploro*, *emendico*, *supplico*, *impetro*, to demand, never govern Two Accusatives. *Exigo*, *jubeo*, *obtestor*, *precor*, *peto*, *interrogo*, very rarely. And those that have Two Accusatives, rather turn that of the Person into an Ablative with the Preposition *a* or *ab*.

As, *Te veritatem exigunt*, *Cic. de Leg. 1. 1.* *Sumpsimus literas non quæ te aliquid juberent*, *Cic. ad Sulp. Ep. 13.* *Illud te obtestor*, *Virg. Æn. 1. 12.*

Dux

Dux etiam potius hoc te Fortuna precatur, Luc. l. 2. Barbaros malle Romam petere Reges quam habere, Tac. Non quemvis hoc idem interrogarem, Cic. Tusc. 5.

Hortor, 2, The Verbs of teaching, *Hortor, consulo, and moneo,* never govern a double Accusative, except when the Accusative of the Thing be express'd by some Pronoun Demonstrative, Relative, or the Interrogative *quid*, or some Noun of Number. As, *Unum duo, multa, pauca, nihil, aliquid, nonnihil.* And all in general rather turn the Accusative of the Thing into an Ablative, except *doceo* taken strictly for *to teach*; but even that, when it signifies *to tell*, rather takes an Ablative with *de*.

Instituo, imbuo, instruo, imbuo, never take a double Accusative, nor *erudio*, except among the Poets.

As, *Sin (quod te jam diu hortor) exieris, Cic. in Catil. Nec te id consulo, Cic. Att. l. 7. Ibo & consulam hanc rem amicos, Plaut. Men. 4. 3. Id ipsum quod me mones quatruiduo ante ad eum scripseram, Cic. ad Att. Sed ut ego quoque te aliquid admoneam, Cic. ad Treb. L. 7. Ep. 13. Hoc me Delphica laurus monent, Sen. Ædip. Act. 1. Qui Senatum docerent de cæde fratris, Sal. B. Jug. 13. might tell. An te asine doceam literas? Cic. Phil. not de literis. Et quæ te leges præceptaque sortia belli erudiit Geni-*

After celo *trix, nimium dedicisse queretur, Stat.*

Celo has commonly a double Accusative; but even after this Verb the Accusative of the Thing is often turned into an Ablative with *de*. As, *De armis,*

mis, de ferro, de insidiis celare te voluit, and that of
 Cic. pro Dejot. And sometimes the Ac- the Person
 cusative of the Person is turned into a by a Da-
 Dative, especially when it is Passive. tive.
 As, *Id Alcibiadi diutius celari non potuit,*
 Corn. Nep. Alc. *Se à Domino celavit,*
 is said by Grammarians to be in Ulpian;
 I meet with nothing like it in the Clas-
 sicks.

Induo, commonly added to this Rule Induo ne-
 by Grammarians, is never found with a ver has a
 double Accusative in any good Author; double Ac-
 but the Mistake seems to arise from this, cusat. yet
 that *induo* is often found with one Ac- has an Ac-
 cusative, which seems to intimate that cusat. of
 the Active has Two: But that is no cer- the Thing.
 tain Rule. Perhaps it may be by a Sy-
 necdoche that *Virgil* says, *Androgei ga-
 leam induitur,* Æn. 2. or *Ovid*, *Protinus
 induitur faciem vultumque Diana,* Met. 1. 2.

Vestior is found also in *Statius* with an and so has
 Accusative, tho' *Vestior* never has a dou- vestior in
 ble Accusative, Theb. v. 485, &c. *Ter- Statius;
 go videt hujus inanem Impexis utrinque ju- tho' it ne-
 vis horrere leonem, Illius in speciem quem ver has a
 per Theunacia Tempe Amphitryoniades fra- double Ac-
 ctum juvenilibus armis vestitur:* With which cusat.
Hercules is clothed.

A double Accusative is found after a double
 some other Verbs, but either 'tis rare, Accusat.
 or only in some particular Phrases. And found after
 these Verbs are, *adjuo*, *cogo*, *condono*, &c. adjuto,

- circumduco*, *ludifico*, *eludo*, *incuso*, *juvo*,
arguo, *sentio*, *objurgo*, *testor*, and *volo*.
- adjuro* As, *Id amabo adjura me*, Ter. Eun. 1. 2. Terence has changed the Accusative of the Person into a Dative; As, *Curra obviam*, atque his *onera adjura*, Hec. 3. 2. Help them with their Burdens. *Quod vos jus coget id voluntate impetret*, Id. Adelph. 3. 4. *Quid non mortalia pectora cogis, Auri sacra fames*, Virg. *Argentum quod habes circumducam* *lepidè lenonem*, Plaut. Pseud. 1. 5. Cheat the Bawd of that Minstrel; for *Tibicinā eā*. *Neu ei succenseat de auro, quod eum ludificatus est*, Plaut. Bac. 3. 4. *Miles, quaeso, mihi ut dicas, unde illum habeas annulum quem parastus hic te eludit*, Plaut. Curc. Act. 5. *Multique se incusat*, Virg. Aen. 1. 12. v. 612. *Ferre eadem omnia quae tute dudum coram me incusaveras*, Ter. Phorm. 5. 7. *Non quo me aliquid juvare possis*, Cic. Att. 16. *Ego me hac te arguo*, Plaut. Men. 5. 5. *Neque eo dico quod quicquam illum senferim*, Ter. Heaut. 3. 2. *Objurgare pater hac me noctes & dies*, Plaut. Merc. 1. 1. i. e. propter hac. *Multa deos aurasque pater testatus inanes*, Virg. Aen. 1. 7. *Ego domi ero, siquid me voles*, Ter. Heaut.

On Obs. 4. These Verbs of asking, that take after Verbs of them an Accusative in the Passive Voice, asking are only these, *Exigor*, *exoror*, *imperor*, *rogor*, *poscor*; of teaching only *doceor*, *edoceor*, and *moneor*, unless we take in five Voise. *eruditus*; for *Græcas literas eruditus*, is Verbs of in A. Gell. says *Linacer*. *Exigor pecuniam, imperor illud*, is common, says *Vossius*. that take Vid. A. Gell. 15. 14. *Consulor* with an an Accus. Accusative is quoted by A. Gell. 1. 4. 10. in the Pas- five.

circumduco, ludifico, eludo, incuso, juvo, arguo, sentio, objurgo, testor, and volo.

- adjuto* As, *Id amibo adjuta me*, Ter. Eun. 1. 2. *Tērence* has changed the Accusative of the Person into a Dative; As, *Curre obviam, atque his onera adjuta*, Hec. 2. 2. Help them with their Burdens. *Quod vos jus coget id voluntate impetret*, Id. Adelph. 3. 4. *Quid non mortalia pectora cogis, Auri sacra famas*, Virg. *Argentum quod habes condonamus te*, Ter. Phorm. 5. 7. *Tibicinam eam circumducam lepide lenonem*, Plaut. Pseud. 1. 5. *Cheat the Bard of that Minstrel; for Tibicinā eā. Neu ei succenseat de auro, quod eum ludificatus est*, Plaut. Bac. 3. 4. *Miles, quaso, mihi ut dicās, unde illum habeas annulum quem parasitus hic te eludit*, Plaut. Curc. Act. 5. *Multique se incusat*, Virg. Aen. 1. 12. v. 612. *Ferme eadem omnia quae tunc dudum coram me incusaveras*, Ter. Phorm. 5. 7. *Non quo me aliquid juvare possis*, Cic. Att. 16. *Ego me hac te arguo*, Plaut. Men. 5. 5. *Neque eo dico quod quicquam illum senserim*, Ter. Heaut. 3. 2. *Objurgare pater hac me noctes & dies*, Plaut. Merc. 1. 1. 1. e. *propter haec. Multa deos aurisque pater testatus inanes*, Virg. Aen. 1. 7. *Ego domi ero, siquid me volest*, Ter. Heaut.

On Obs. 4. These Verbs of asking, that take after Verbs of them an Accusative in the Passive Voice, asking are only these, *Exigor, exoror, imperor, rogor, poscor*; of teaching only *doceor*, that govern an Accus. *edoceor*, and *moneor*, unless we take in the Passive Voice. *eruditus*; for *Græcas literas eruditus*, is Verbs of in A. Gell. says *Linæer*. *Exigor pecuniam, imperor illud*, is common, says *Vossius*. that take an Accus. Vid A. Gell. 15. 14. *Consulor* with an in the Passive Accusative is quoted by A. Gell. 1. 4. 10. five.

Cato rem quam consulebatur perfici volebat. Celor
 Celor is found with an Accusative in found with
an Accus.
Plaut. Pseud. 1. 5. Cur hæc, ubi tu re- rarely.
scivisti illico, celata me sum; but 'tis Sometimes
 very rare. In that Passage of Terence, an Ablat.
Hec. 4. 4. Nosne hoc celatos tam diu! misboudie.
That we should be kept so long from this!
 I rather suppose *hoc* to be the Ablative,
 governed of *de* understood.

These Verbs Passive *Vescor*, *pascor* and Some Verbs
depascor, have no double Accusative in that never
 the Active Voice, and yet have often have two
 one Accusative in the Passive instead of Accusa-
 the Ablative which is more usual. tives in the
Active state

As, *Ut infirmissimos suorum mox forte duæos vescer-* one in the
entur, Tac. Pascuntur vero sylvas, & summa Passive.
Lyæi, Virg. Georg. 1. 3. Miseror morsu de-
pascitur artus, Virg. Æn. 1. 2. unless you will
 reckon them Verbs deponent.

1. *Ad* is sometimes understood before On Ell. 1.
 proper Names of whole Islands and To omit-
 Countries; as, *Ibitis Italiam, Virg. Pro-* ted before
ficisci Peloponesum, Liv. Cyprum concedere, Names of
Justin. At nos hinc alii futientes ibimus Islands and
Afros, Virg. Germanicus Ægyptum pro- Countries.
ficiscitur, Tac. L. 2. When Rus *signi-*
fies some particular Country-House,
 the Preposition is sometimes express;
 as in that of A. Gell. 19. 5. *In Tiburto*
Rus concesseramus hominis amici divitiæ.

2. *Ad*, so, is understood before other and some-
 common Names of Places besides times be-
Domus fore com-
 and *Rus*, especially among the Poets: mon names

Q

Castles of Places

Cassita nidum migravit, A. Gell. L. 2. Cap. 29. *Unde sama ejus insulas eve-
sta, & proximas provincias pervagata per
Italiam quoque celebrabatur*, Tac. Ann.
L. 12.

*Speluncam Dido dux & Trojanus eandem deveni-
unt*, Virg. Æn. 4. *Ripamve injussus abibis*, Id.
Æn. 6. *Tumulum antiquæ cereræ venimus*, Id.

Ad always understood after Motion before inficias, &c.
But is always understood before *inficias*, *inferias*, *exequias* and *suppetias*. *Si inficias ibit, testis me-
cum est annulus quem amiserat*, Ter. Adel. 3. 2. *Pæan jubet ire cruento Inferias monstro juvenes*,
Stat. 1. Theb. 636. *Næ tibi suppetias tempore ad-
veni modo*, Plaut. Men. 5. 7. *Exequias Chremeti
ire jam tempus est*, Ter. Phorm. 5. 8.

Ad is understood before *rus* only in the Singular; before *Domus* Singular and Plural. *Jam ubi vos delapsi domus, &
in rura vestra eritis*, Liv. L. 9. dec 4.

Ad sometimes ex-press before proper names of Cities.
3 The Preposition *ad* is sometimes ex-press; as, *Profectus sum ad Capuam*, Cic. especially,

1st, If it signifies coming near or to a Place, without entering into it; as, *Ad
Genevæ pervenit*, Cæsar. or,

If *urbs* or *oppidum* be added.
2dly, If the common Name *Urbs*, or *oppidum* be added to the proper Name; as, *Ad cyrrham oppidum iter constituit*,
Sal. Jug.

If an Ad-jective be added to the proper Name.
3dly, If an Adjective be added to the proper Name; as *Magnum iter ad do-
ctas proficisci cogor Athenas*, Propert. or,

4thly,

4thly, If a Genitive Case of the Possessor be added to *domus*, or an Adjective, we find the Preposition *ad* often expressed; as, *Et mecum ad Prætoris domum ferri*, Cic. *Omnes ad eam domum, in qua iste diversabatur profecti sunt*, Id. Att. L. 11. 6.

5thly, If a Pronoun Possessive be joyned to *domus*, it is elegant to express the Possessive by the Primitive, and to put the Preposition *ad* to that; as, *Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum*, Ter. Eun. 1. 2. *Sextertia deferri ad se domum jussit*, Cic. *Nisi forte domum ad nos rediit*, Ter. Eun. 4. 3.

To the Ellipsis of the Preposition *ad*, might also be added that of the Preposition *per*, chiefly observable among the Poets; as, *Vastumque cava trabe currimus æquor*, Virg. Æn. 3. *Ino etiam prima terras ætate vagata est*, Prop. L. 2. Ec. 21. *Troes miseri ventis maria omnia vecti*, Virg. Æn. L. 1. *Gens inimica mihi Tyrrhenum navigat æquor*, Id. *Jurare Jovem*, Cic. *Et fulminantem pejerant Jovem*, Plin. *Quosque juravit mihi deos JASON*, Sen. Med. 1. 1. *Mea me pietas & conscia virtus Hægere vias*, i. e. *per has vias*, Stat. 1. Theb. 645. and also *propter* often understood before *quod* and *vicem*; as, *Fucum mihi genitum scito quod equidem diis habeo gratiam*, A. Gell. 9. 3. *Quod te per superos*

& conscia numina veri Oro miserrere laborum, Virg. Æn. 2. Menedemi vicem miseret me, Ter. Heaut. 4 4.

On Ell. 2. This Ellipsis after Verbs Passive, &c. pleraque, is found mostly among Poets and Historians. *Cætera* is often thus used after an Adjective, and *pleraque* sometimes, and *omnia* after *similis*. And also *vicem* for vice, for vice, or *propter vicem*, and *magnam partem* for *magna ex parte*.

Excepto quod non simul esses cætera lætus, Hor. L. 1. Ep. 10. *Sanè cætera pater familias & prudens, & attentus*, Cic. *Vir cætera sanctissimus*, Vell. Paterc. *Homo pleraque alia non indoctus*, A. G. 9. 10. *Pleraue haud indiligentis*, A. Gell. *Omnia mercurio similis*, Virg. Æn. 4. *Clamor undique sollicitis vicem Imperatoris militibus sublatus est*, Liv. *Suam vicem magis anxios*, Id. *Nostram vicem ne irascere*, Id. *Magnam partem ex Iambis constat nostra oratio*, Cic. *Amici magnam partem cessatores sunt*, A. Gell. l. 2. c. 19.

On Ell. 3. The same Ellipsis of *for*, or *at*, is sometimes found after Verbs of fearing, or being angry. Thus Hor. Od. 12. L. 2. *Unde periculum fulgens contremuit domus Saturni veteris*. And again, L. 3. Od. 27. *Sic & Europe scarentem belluis pontum mediasque frandes palluit nudax*.

So Virg. Æn. 3. *Sonitumque pedum vocemque tremisco*, Pers. Sat. 5. *Recuritaque Sabbata palles*, Virg. Æn. L. 2. *Pars stupeat innupta donum exitiale Minervæ*. *Mirantur & trepidant presagia*, Apul. *Fura fidemque supplicii erubuit*, Virg. Æn. L. 2. *Id quidem adveniens stomachabar modo*, Ter. Eun. 2. 3. *S; id succenseat nunc*, Id. Andr. 2. 3. *Id ego*

exerucior, Plaut. Epid. 2. 2. *Qui artem Grammaticam cavillantur*, Quint. So *Id prodeo*, Ter. Eun. 5. 7.

Do is also omitted after *Valeo* and *On Ell. 6.* *polleo*, just as it is after *pessum*, namely, ^{do omitted} not before every Accusative Case, but ^{after va-} only Nouns signifying Quantity; as, ^{leo and} *Tantum, quantum, omnia, nihil. aliquid,* ^{polleo.} *minimum, &c.* And also the Pronouns ^{nouns of} *hoc, id, quod, quid,* and the like; and ^{Quantity.} tho' it is good to say, *Deus potest omnia,* it would not be so good to say, *Deus potest miracula.*

NOTES on Chap. VII.

The Rule of the Vocative Case.

IF after an Antecedent with *O*, ^{qui on a s. 1:} should happen to have a Third Per- ^{qui with a} son, you are then to suppose the Inter- ^{Third Per-} jection to be, *O exclamantis*, not *O vocantis*, as in that of Virg. *Æn. 3.* ^{O excla-} *O Felix ante alios Priamida virgo, Hostilem ad* ^{mantis.} *tumulum Troja sub manibus altis Jussa mori: quæ sortitus non pertulit ullos, Nec vi-* ^{qui after} *etoris heri tetigit capiva cubile.* ^{O vocan-}

If *qui* do come after a Vocative, yet ^{tis, with} if the Antecedent be again repeated ^{the repea-} with *qui*, the Verb that follows must be ^{red Sub-} of the Third Person: As in that of ^{stantive} Virg. *Person.*

Virg. Ecl. 7. *Museosi fontes, & somno mollior herba, & qua vos rara viridis tegit arbutus umbra, Solstitium pecori defendite.* Tegit is the Third Person, because in the Second Verse the entire Sentence is, *Ecce O arbute, qua arbutum tegit vos rara umbra, &c.*

NOTES on Chap. VIII.

The Rule of the Ablative Case.

on obs. 1.
Note 1.

WHenever a Participle of the Present Tense is joyned with this Ablative absolute it ends in *e*, not in *i*; as, *Imperante Augusto. not imperanti.*

Note 2.
Sometimes we find a Nominat. absolute.

In Authors we sometimes meet with a Nominative Case absolute, instead of an Ablative, which is not for Imitation. Thus Livy, Hist. 1. 2. c. 8. *Valerius Horatiusque consules sortiti, uter (Jovis edes) dedicaret, Horatio sorte evenit.* And Tac. Ann. 1. 1. *Pars Agrippina occurrentes, plurimi ad Germaniam regressi,isque ita capit.* So Sallust. Jug. *Itaque Imperatores facile qua petebant adepti, missa sunt eo cohortes Ligurum quatuor,* a Way of Speaking taken from the Greeks. Vid. Barnes Eurip. p. 123.

When

When the Pronoun *that* comes before *On Ell. 3.*
 a Word of Time after the Particle *at*, Rule 1.
 it is Elegant in Latin to render the a Noun of
 Pronoun by an Accusative of the Neu- Time turn-
 ter Gender, and the Word of Time by ned into a
 the Genitive. As, *Deinde profectus est* Genitive
id temporis, Cic. pro Mil. *Quare nun-* after that
quam postea se publico illud hora sine Tribu-
nis commisit, Suet. Claud. 26. *Ego istuc*
etatis non amori operam dabam, Ter.
 Heaut. 1. 1. *Ne navigarem tandem hoc*
etatis senex, Plaut. Bacc. 2. 3.

At or *for* before *Price*, joyned with Note 2.
 the Adjectives *cheap*, *low*, *great*, and
 the like, is commonly rendred by *vili*, *vili*, *paulo*
paulo, *minimo*, *magno*, *dimidio*, *nimio*, *plu-*
rimum, *duplo*, without the Substantive.

Hence it is that *Valeo*, to be worth or Note 3.
 to be valued at, has an Ablative of the *valeo*
Price. As, *Cum scrupulum valeret sester-*
tius vicenis, Plin. Yet *Varro* has used it
 with an Accusative, as is supposed by
 Virtue of *circa* or *ad* understood; As,
Denarii dicti quod denos aris valebant.

The Preposition *for* after *mutuo* is ob- On Ell. 4.
 serv'd to be sometimes, tho' rarely ex- Rule 3.
 press'd: As in that of Val. Max. 1. 5, *mutuo*
 c. 2. *Pro Leonico omnes hostium captivos*
permutavit.

Hence *into* after *verto*, to change, is Note 2.
 sometimes omitted, and the Word fol-
 lowing turned into an Ablative; as in
 that

that of *Horace*, L. 1. Od. 35. *Vel super-
bos vertere funeribus triumphos.*

Note 3. After *muto* we sometimes find the
after *muto* Case with *for* turred into an Accusa-
a *Hypallage* tive, and then the Case without *for*,
of Cases. i. e. the Accusative is turned into an
Ablative. As in *Hor.* l. 1. Od. 17. *Sape
Faunus amicum Lucretilem mutat Lycao*,
often changes *Lycaum* for *Lucretilis*. So
again, L. 2. Od. 12. *Num permutare ve-
lis Mygdouias opes crine Licimniæ*, *Licim-
nia's Hair* for the *Phrygian Riches*.

Note 4. If *for* come after an Adjective with
too before it, 'tis sometimes a Sign of
Rule 5. the Dative; namely, when the said Ad-
an Adje&t. jective is rendred by a Positive Degree,
with *too* jective is rendred by a Positive Degree,
rendred by as sometimes it is. Thus *Hor.* L. 3.
a Positive, Od. 27. *Levis una mors virginum culpa.*
and *for* by And *Tacit. Ann.* l. 15. *Nam adhuc per
a Dative. domum aut hortos cecinerat Juvenilibus lu-
dis, quos ut parum celebres, & tanta voci
angustos spernebat.* And *Sen. Med. Act.* 5.
Nimum est dolori numerus angustus meo,
Too narrow for my Grief.

On Ell. 6. Sometimes *from* is express'd before
from ex- the proper Names of Places, and *Domus*.
prest be- As, *Ab Roma legatum venisse nuntiatum est,*
fore proper Liv. *Abesse ab domo non possunt, Id. Dum
names and domus. senes ab domo arcessunt, Id.*

Note 2. *From* is likewise omitted before any
from omit- common Names of Places, as well as
ted before *Domus* and *Riu*; especially among the
common Poets.
names. As,

As, *Surgit humo pigra*, Ovid. Met. l. 2. *Crebri cecidere calo lapides*, Liv. *Quam qui pulsi loco cedere ausi sunt*, Sal. Cat. l. 1. *Telamone pulsum patriaque exulantem*; Cic. *Cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent*, Cæf. *isque adyis hæc tristia dicta reportat*, Virg. Æn. l. 2. *Ne sati nescia Dido finibus arceret*, Id. l. 1. *Quam nostro illæ labatur pectore vultus*, Id. Ecl. 1. *Non semper imbres nubibus hispidis manant*, Hor. l. 2. Od. 9.

There are some Verbs after which Note 3. from may be omitted before any Ablative Case whatsoever, and those are, *Absolvo*, *arceo*, *defendo*, *distinguo*, *divido*, *expedio*, *intercludo*, *interdico*, *libero*, *moveo*, *quiesco*, *secerno*, *seduco*, *servo*, *solvo*, *tempero*, *veto*; And some Participial Adjectives; as, *Natus*, *prognatus*, *satus*, *cretus*, *creatus*, *ortus*, *editus*, *sprung* or *risen*, *liber*, *immunis*, *free*, *placidus*, *calm*. As also after some Substantives; as, *Exul*, *extorris*, *otium*, *quies*, and the Adverb *procul*.

As, *Ego me etsi peccato absolvo*, Liv. *Cur inficia absolvo* tus honora archerim fama, Stat. 2 Theb. v. 626. *arceo* *Et igneam defendis astatem capillis*, Hor. l. 1. Od. 17. *defendo* *Quam qui non potuit verum distinguere falso*, Id. l. 1. *distinguo* Ep. 10. *Et penitus toto divisos orbe Britannos*, Virg. *divido* Ecl. 1. *Non animum metu expedies*, Hor. l. 3. Od. 24. *expedio* *Sive re frumentaria intercludi posse considerent*, Cæf. *intercludo* B. G. l. 1. *Aqua & igne interdiciunt*, Liv. *Ego me interdico* *etsi peccato absolvo*, *supplicio non libero*, Liv. *Moveo* *libero* *re aliquem possessione*, or *senatu movere*, common *moveo* in Cicero. *Quibus quidem quam facile poterat quiesci*, *quiesco* *si hic qui esset*, Ter. Andr. 4. 2. *Me gelidum nemus* *nympharumque læves cum satyris chori secernunt* *populo*. *secerno* Hor. l. 1. Od. 1. *Et cum frigida mors anima se sedulo*

servo duxerit artus, Virg. Æn. 4. *Sævis hospes Trojane,*
solvo periculis servati facimus, Id. Æn. 8. *Ergo omni lon-*
tempero go solvis se Teucris luctu, Æn. 2. *Nedum se illis*
veto corruptis moribus temperarent, Sal. *Vetuit me tali*
liber voce Quirinus, Hor. l. 1. Sat. 10. *Natus, prognatus,*
immunis &c. See Ell. 8. *Liber omni metu,* Liv. *Im-*
placidus munis militia, Id. *Cum placidum ventis staret mare,*
exul, ex- Virg. Ecl. 2. *Patriâ exul,* Liv. *Exorris urbe,* Id.
sorris, o- *Orium bello (rôgat) furiosa Thrace,* Hor. l. 2. Od. 16.
rium, quies Rest from War. *Postquam prima quies epulis,* Virg.
exul, fu- Æn. 1. *Beatus ille qui procul negotiis,* Hor. Epod. 2.
de- 'Tis to be observ'd here, that exul, fugitivus de-
gener gener are found sometimes with a Genitive
sometimes after from, instead of an Ablative. Thus Hor.
a Genit. l. 2. Od. 16. *Patriâ quis exul se quoque fugitivus,*
 I suppose from the Greek *Τὸ πατρίδ' ὅν οὐρανὸν*
χ' ἐαυτὸν ἐούρε. So Flor. l. 3. c. 1. *Finium suorum,*
Regnique fugitivus. And Ovid. Met. l. 11.
 v. 314. *Patriâ non degener artus.*

On Ell. 7. In before Stead rendred by *Vicis*, is
Inst. 1. often a Sign of the Accusative. As,
vicem for *Ecquis homo est qui hodie sese excruciar*
vice. *meam vicem possit pati?* Plaut. Most. 2. 1.
In my Stead. *Nobis libitum est navigiorum*
genera conquirere, iisque vicem aliarum
ineptiarum vacantem animum occupare,
 A. Gell. 10. 25.

Inst. 2. In is in this Case sometimes exprest;
 as, *Ardens in cupiditatibus,* Sal. l. 1.

Inst. 4. In after Adjectives signifying Plenty,
 In exprest is sometimes exprest; as, *In gratia pe-*
after Plen- *cuniaque opulentum esse,* A. Gell. 16. 19.
ty.

Inst. 5. It is likewise exprest after Adjectives
 and after signifying Comparison, or Verbs signify-
Compari- *ing to equal, excell, &c.* As, *Hæc in re*
son, &c. *scilicet*

scilicet unà multum dissimiles, Hor. l. 1. Ep. 10. Nihil illo fuisse excellentius vel in vitiis, vel in virtutibus, C. Nep. Alcib. Differunt in candore, Plin. Hist. Nulla in re discrepant, Cic. Comitatum Agrippinae obvii in dolore anteibant, Tac. Ann. l. 3.

In also after Sum is sometimes expressed; as, Quo evadat sum in metu, Plaut. Asin. 1. 1. Vide ne sis in expectatione, Id. Mil. 4. 4.

Rule 2.
and after
Sum.

And also after Glorior and Lator; as, In virtute gloriamur, Cic. Gaudeat in puero si quis amicus erit, Propert. l. 2. Eleg. 4. Letaris tu in omnium gemitu, Cic.

Rule 3.
also after
glorior
and lator.

In before Time, tho' very rarely, is rendered by an Accusative. Thus Plin. Ep. ad Rufum, l. 3. Ep. 7. In hac tamen tranquillitate annum quintum & sexagesimum decessit, by Virtue of circa or sub understood.

Rule 5.
In before
Time rendered by an
Accusative.

Under this Rule of Time comes also Memoria, when it signifies Time; as, Hoc persape & nostra & patrum memoria usu venit, Cic. In ours and our Fathers Time. But then this Ablative is sometimes turn'd into a Genitive. Thus A. Gell. l. 13. c. 17. Ad Sulpicium Apollinarem scripsit hominem memoria nostrae doctissimum. But then in seems to be turn'd into of.

Note 2.
under time
comes memoria.

Rule 6. *In* is also understood sometimes before proper Names of Countries and common Names of Places, especially among the Poets; as, *Nascuntur plurima ponto*, Virg. Ecl. 18. *Duci intra muros hortatur, & arce locari*, Id. Æn. 2.

On Ell. 8 Under Verbs of unloading, easing, &c. come these that follow, viz. *Abdico, attondeo, circumduco, circumverto, destituo, elavo, emungo, exharedo, exharedem facio, exbaurio, expedio, exuo, evertio, fraudo, inanio, interverto, libero, levo, mulcto, nudo, orbo, peculor, privo, purgo, solo, solvo, spolio, tondeo, vacuo, vasto, viduo.*

abdico As, *Abdicavit se magistratu*, Liv. Cic. *Me sce-*
attondeo *lus auro usque attondis*, Plaut. *Næ ille mihi sit mul-*
circumduco *to tanto charior, si me illoc auro tanto circumduxerit*,
 Plaut. Bac. 2. 3. And again, A 5 S 2. *Quadrin-*
gentis Philippis filius me & Chrysalus circumduxerunt.
Aut de compacto faciunt consutis dolis qui me argento
circumver- *circumverant*, Id. Plaut. 1. 5. *Exquo destituit*
to, destituo *deos mercede pacta Laomedon*, Hor. 1. 3. Od. 3.
frustror [*Frustror* is rarely us'd to disappoint, when of fol-
 low, we have it once in *Florus*, *Cum Punica*
prædæ omnibus promontoriis, insulisque frustrarentur,
 Flor. 1. 2. c. 2. which Ablative A. Gell. has
 turn'd into a Genitive, 1. 5. c. 10. *Magister*
eloquentiæ inclutus captivæ virtute excogitæ fru-
stratus fuit, as *fallo* and *decipio* are us'd, Chap. 3.
Obi. 7. N. 4.] Nam in mari repperi, hic elavi
elavo *bonis*, Plaut. Al. 1. 2. *Emunxi argento senes*,
emungo Ter. Phorm. 4. 4. *Parentes, si pergunt liberi ex-*
exbaurio *rare, bonis exharedant*, A. Gell. 1. 1. c. 6. *Ut ego*
exhar. d. m. men bonis me faciam, Plaut. Most. 1. 3.
Civitates bonis exbaurire, Cic. *Nec ante abesseum*
est,

off, quam castris quoque exuerant hostem, Liv. 1. 7.
 Bell. Punic. [Exiit humero pharetram, or hume-
 rum pharetra, Ovid. Met. 1. 2. Calist. Non ani-
 mum metu, non mortis laqueis expedit caput, Hor. expeditio
 1. 3. Od. 24. Sed buno funditus evertit bonis, Cic. evertit
 Quem regno Hesperiae fraudo, Virg. Æn. 4. Ut me fraudo
 si posset muliere interverteret, Plaut. Pseud. 3. 2. interverso
 Magno me metu liberabis, Cic. in Catil. Orat. 1. libero
 Ego hoc te fasce levabo, Virg. Ecl. 9. Levo has levo
 a Genitive in Plaut. Rud. 1. 4. Ut me omnium
 jam laborum levas] Uter demutassit poculo multa-
 bitur, Plaut. Stich. 5. 4. Armis nudare jacentem, nudo
 Ovid. Met. 1. 12. Orbare se luce, Cic. Pecula-orbo
 bantur suo jure Rempub. Flor. 3. 7. Aegritudo me peculor
 somno privat, Cic. Att. 1. 9. Thalamos purgare privo
 maritis, Stat. 5 Theb. v. 137. Quantas populus purgo
 solaverit urbes, Id. 4 Theb. v. 36. Longo solus solo
 se Iucris luctu, Virg. Æn. 2. Apollonium omni
 argento spoliasti, Cic. in Verr. 6. Itaque tondebo spolia
 auro usque ad vivam cutem, Plaut. Bacch. 2. 3. tondeo
 Latos vastat cultoribus agros, Virg. Æn. 8. Orni vasto
 viduantur foliis, Hor. 1. 2. Od. 9. viduo.

Of these Verbs *Fraudo* seems to have Note 2.
 a different use from the rest, taking *fraudo*
 sometimes an Accusative and a Genitive, ^{Accus. and}
 instead of an Ablative and Accusative. ^{a Genit.}
 Thus Cæsar 1. 3. B. C. *Stipendium equitum*
fraudarant, for *stipendio equites*

The Ablative Case found after Verbs Case 2.
 of accusing, condemning, acquitting, is ^{after Verbs}
 commonly the general Words, *Crimen*, ^{of accusing,}
Scelus, *Peccatum*, &c. But the parti- ^{the ge-}
 cular Crime, as *Furtum*, *homicidium*, *adul-* ^{for a Crime}
terium, *stuprum*, &c. are rather of the ^{Ablat.}
 Genitive or Ablative with *de*. However ^{the parti-}
 the particular Crime in some Phrases is ^{cular Gen.}
 found with *de*. ^{or Ablat.}

sometimes
otherwise.

found in the Ablative without *de*. As, Suet. Otho. c. 2. *Ut damnatum repetundis consularem virum non dubitaret in senatum inducere. Priscus casium postulaverat repetundis*, is in Tacit. Ann. l. 3. and Plaut. has, *Ita eum furto alligat*; and Virgil, *Damnabis tu quoque votis*. And the general Words, *Crimen*, *scelus*. &c. are sometimes found in the Genitive. As, *Peccati se insimulant quod dolere intermiserint*, Cic. Tusc. 3. *Adjuvat etiam Piso quod ab urbe discedit, & sceleris condemnat generum suum*, Cic. ad Terent. l. 14. *In quo video Neronis iudicio non te absolutum esse improbitatis*, Cic. Verr. 3. And if so, then

uterque,
nullus, &c.
may be
Genit.

uterque, nullus, neuter, alius, ambo, and the Superlative Adjectives may be us'd in the Genitive, contrary to Lilly's Rule.

Note 2.
the Punish-
ment com-
monly Ab-
lative, but
always so
after mul-
cto.

The Punishment after Verbs of accusing, &c. is commonly Ablative, but after *multo* it is always Ablative; as, *Tanta pecunia damnantur, quanta exsolvi non posset*, Just. l. 8. c. 1. *Ausus est milites capite punire*, Suet. Otho. *Causa cognita capitis absolutus, pecunia multatur*, C. Nep. milit. See more Chap. 3. on Obs. 5. N. 4.

Note 3.
sometimes
in us'd be-
fore the
Crime for
de.

Sometimes the Preposition *in* is us'd after these Verbs instead of *de*; as, *Si quo in pari ante peccato convictus sit*, Cic. 2 de Invent. *Primum me tibi excuso, in eo ipso in quo te accuso*, Id. ad Q. f.

The

Of the Ablative.

135

The Preposition of after born, begot, Case 3.
sprung, live, consist, become, is sometimes the Prep.
 exprest; as, *Ex me hic non natus est*, Ter. ^{exprest}
Adelph. Ab his majoribus orti, Hor. Sat. 5. ^{after born,}
 1. 1. *Humili de stirpe creatus*, Ovid. Met. ^{Sc.}
 1. 14. *Vivitur ex raptō*, Id. 1. 1. *De lucro*
vivere, Cic. *Ex fallaciis totus constare vi-*
detur, Id.

This Ablative after become is some- Note 2.
 times turn'd into a Dative; as, *Vide the Ablat.*
quaso, Antoni, quid tibi futurum sit, Cic. ^{after be-}
 Phil. 2. *Quid mihi fiet postea*, Plant. ^{come}
 Bacch. ^{turn'd into}
 a Dative.

Likewise *facio* the Active of *fio*, go- Note 3.
 verns either a Dative or Ablative; as, *so facio*
Quid tu huic homini facias? Cic. *Quid Ablat or*
enim faceret huic conclusioni, Id. 4. Acad. ^{Dative.}
Quid hoc homine faciatis, Cic. Ver. 3.
Nec quid me nunc faciam scio, Ter.

Under Verbs signifying Gladness or Case 4.
Pride comes glorior, I boast, which glo- ^{glorior}
rior has sometimes the Preposition *de* ^{Ablative}
 exprest; as, *Tu de tuis vitiis intoleran-* ^{with de.}
tissime gloriaris, Cic. in Vatin.

After *labore, to be sick*, the Preposi- Case 5.
 tion is sometimes exprest; as, *Laborat laboro*
de dolore, Ter. Andr. *Quod ex pedibus Ablative*
laborares, Cic. ^{with ex.}

In this Rule of Descriptions we ought Case 6.
 cautiously to follow the Usage of Au- ^{Praise or}
 thors, as not being always at Liberty ^{Dispraise}
 to use either a Genitive or Ablative. ^{don't al-}
 Thus ^{ways allow}

of either a
Genitive
or Ablat.

Thus whereas Terence says, *Bono animo es*, and Cicero, *Sum magno animi perturbatione*, it would not be safe to say, *animi* or *perturbationis*. And where Terence says, *Tam nulli consilii sum*, and Suetonius, *Cibi minimi erat*, it would not be well to use *consilio* or *cibo*.

Case 7.
the Prep.
signifying
the Matter
express.

The Preposition of signifying the Matter, is sometimes exprest; as, *Cui pharetra ex auro*, Virg. *Æn.* 1. 4. *De lachrymis factas sentiet esse meis*, Ovid. de Trist. Eleg. 1.

Case 8.
opus and
usus not
used but
with it.

Opus and *usus* are scarce ever us'd for Need, but when they come along with *est*: *opus habeo* or *usum habeo* hardly ever appearing in any good Author. *Usus est* occurs in Plautus and A. Gellius, and once in Virgil; as, *Viginti jam usu'st filio argenti minis*, Plaut. *As.* 1. 1. *Se pecuniam, qua nihil sibi esset usus non accipere*, A. Gell. 1. 1. 14. *Arma acri facienda viro jam viribus usus*, Virg. *Æn.* 8. but is found in no other Authors, except when a latter Supine follows turn'd into a Participle; as, *Non usus acto est mihi nunc*, Ter. *Hec.* 3. 1. Plautus has turn'd *usus* in this Sense into *usui*, Pseud. 1. 2. *Cur ego vestem aurum, atque ea quibus est vobis usui prohibeo*, for *ea quae sunt vobis usui*, or rather *ea quibus usus est vobis*, Those Things which you have Need of. The same Author also sometimes turns this Ab-

usus with
est turn'd
into usui.

it some-
times takes
an Accusat.

lative

lative into an Accusative; as, Turc. A. 5. *Puero opus est cibum.* And again, Pseud. 1. 3. *Ad eam rem usus est hominem astutum.* And again, Pseud. 4. 7. *Helleborum hisce hominibus opus est.* In the first and why: and last Examples *dari* seems to be understood, in the second *usus* has the Case of *utor*, which anciently govern'd an Accusative. *Vid. A. Gell. 17. 2.*

The Preposition understood before this Ablative is *a* or *ab*, which *Caesar* sometimes expresses thus, Bell. Gall. 1. 1. where *Ariovistus* is said to answer *Caesar's* Ambassadors thus, *Si quid ipsi à Cesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse?* If he had Need of *Caesar*, that then he was ready to come to him. So *opus est mihi pecunia*, is as much as *opus est mihi à pecuniâ*, My Work or Business is from Money, being a Latin Idiom for I have Need of it.

This Ablative after *dignus*, *indignus*, Case 10. is sometimes turn'd into a Genitive, not The Ablat. in Poets and Historians only, but even after dignus turn'd into a Genitive. in *Cicero* himself; As, *Suscipe curam & cogitationem dignissimam tuae virtutis, ad Att. Et hunc unum esse in hac civitate dignum hujus imperii dicit, Ibid. Descendam magnorum haudquaquam indignus avorum, Virg. Aen. 12.* The Accusative of *quid* sometimes is once found in *Plautus*, Cap. 5. 2. *Non an Accusat. me censes scire quid dignus siem?* for *quid* of *quid*. *meritus sim.*

Note 2. It is not amiss, if after the Ablative to the Abl. that follows *dear, cheap*, you joyn contrd after *dear*, put Adverbially. Thus Plaut. Epid. 3. 3. *cheap*, add *contra*. *Tu habes servum quantivis pretii, non caru'st auro contrd.*

Case 11. This Ablative denoting some inhe-
The Ablat. denoting some inher-
rent Quality, is often turn'd into an
Acculative by Synecdoche among Poets
and Historiſys; as, *Celer pedes, tardus*
animum, totas o'xus, Hom. but is most
elegantly rendred by Note 12. of this
Ellipsis, as a *Man flow of Understanding*,
is better rendred *Vir tardo animo*, than
tardus animo or *animum*.
Note 12.

Case 12. The Preposition *a* or *de* is sometimes
after Ful-
ness or
emptiness
a or *de*
sometimes
expressed.
expressed after Ful-
ness; as, *Locus a frumento copiosus*, Cic.
De nugis refertus liber, Id.

But after Emptiness always *a* or *ab*;
as, *Nuda a magistratibus Respub.* Liv.
Vacuum ab defensoribus, Cæſ. B. G. l. 2.
See more Chap. 3. Note 2. on Obs. 3.

On Ell. 9. On or upon before Place, after Verbs

Case 1. signifying Rest is often expressed; and
the Prep. sometimes after *nitor*, to depend; as, *In*
expressed af-
ter Rest, &c. *nobis tantum ipsis nitamur*, A. Gell. l. 2. c. 29.

Case 6. Tacitus has used the Word of Time
the word
of Time
after on
rendred by
an accusat.
after *on* in the Accusative, Ann. lib. 4.
in the Story of Sabinus, *Sed Caesar solen-*
nia incipientis anni Kalendas Januarias epi-
stola precatuſ, Having deſtr'd by Letter
the Solemnities of the Year beginning on the
Kalends of January. This is very rare.

The

The Noun that follows the Particle *EH.* 11. *than* has commonly the same Verb understood after it, that is exprest before it; as, *Mercy is more acceptable to God than Sacrifice*, i. e. *than Sacrifice is*. *No Man has a greater Respect for you than I*, i. e. *than I have*. In this Case we are left at Liberty whether we will leave out *than*, and make the Word following by an Ablative, or exprest the Particle *than*, and make the Word following such Case as the Verb understood requires before it, and that is commonly a Nominative: As for Example, if one were to render this sentence, *No Man living is more friendly to me than he*, I may render it either, *Amicior mihi nullus vivit eo*, or *amicior mihi nullus vivit atque is*, or *atque is est*, as *Plautus* does in *Mercator*. So again in this Instance, *You think yourself a greater Man in this than Lelius*, I may render it, *Hoc te superiorem putas Lelio*; or as *Tully* does in *Orat. pro Flac.* *Hoc te superiorem putas quam Lelium*; or lastly, because *than* has a Copulative Power, therefore it is also to be rendered by the same Case with *te*, and that more usually, *Hoc te superiorem putas quam Lelium*. Thus *Tully de Leg.* *Melius esse aliquid quam virtutem necesse est*, which is better, because more usual than *quam virtus*. *Si me nihilo minus nostri curiosum*

Uses of
than after
a Compa-
rative.

in *Repub. quam te*, Cic. ad Att. rather than *quam tu*, or *quam tu es*.

However when the Comparative Degree is an Adverb, or with its Substantive follows the Verb, it is always better to render *than* by *quam*, than to make it a Sign of the Ablative. Thus *My Brother hath a finer Book than you*, is much better rendred, *Mens frater elegantiores habet librum, quam tu*, than to say, *elegantiores habet librum te*, or *Mens frater elegantius scribit quam tu*, rather than *te*. Tho' sometimes this latter way is met with among Poets; as, Ovid de Trist. Eleg. 4. *Neritio nam mala plura tui*, an Orator would rather have said, *quam Neritius*. So Horace, l. 3. Od. 23. *Non sumtuosa blandior hostia molliabit aversos Penates farre pio & saliente mica*, for *blandius quam far pium*, by Id. 2. Chap. 1. *Pulchrum ornatum turpes mores pejus cano collinunt*, Plaut. Pæn. 1. 2. for *quam canum*.

Note 2 *Than* must always be exprest by *quam*, than *ex. ac*, or *atque*, when it comes before a Nominative and a Verb; as, *Sol revera major est, quam oculis videtur*, Cic.

Note 3. Except when *is want*, *is thought*, *is expected*, or *hoped*, *is just* or *fit*, be thought, the Verbs that follow the Comparative; as, *Ailarior solito*, Ter. *Opinione* or *spe celerius*, Cic. *Ut celerius omnium opinione, manum confereret*, Hirt. Bell.

Bell. Alex. *Tempus abire tibi est, ne potum
largius equo rideat*, Hor. l. 2. Epist. 2.
in fine.

Or except the Verb *speak* comes after Note 4.
the Comparative sooner; as, *Dicto prope
citius equum in viam Claudius egit*, Liv.
l. 3. Bell. Pun. *Spur'd his Horse into the
Road sooner than one could speak.*

Than before the Relative *whom* or Note 5.
which, must never be express'd in Latin, ^{than be-}
but always rendred by an Ablative Case; ^{fore qui}
as, *M. Tullio, quo nemo Romanorum fuit*, ^{always a}
eloquentior, caput abscissum est, ^{sign of the} *which quo* ^{Abl.}
can never be turned into *quam qui*.

After *plus* and *amplius*, *than* is com- Note 6.
monly omitted in Latin, and yet the ^{than after}
Noun following is of the same Case, ^{plus and}
which it would have been of, if *quam* ^{amplius}
had been express'd; as, *Plus quingentos co-* ^{omitted,}
saphos impegit mihi, Ter. Adel. *Romani* ^{and the}
paulo plus sexcenti ceciderunt, Liv. l. 29. ^{word fol-}
Cum ipsi non amplius quingentos equites ha- ^{lowing put}
berent, Cæsar. l. 4. B. G. *In eo prælio non* ^{in the Abl.}
amplius ducentos milites desideravit, Id.
l. 3. B. C.

Sometimes *than* after the Comparati- Note 7.
ve *more* or *less* comes before a Word ^{than after}
of Measure or Number, and is used in ^{more or}
the Genitive; as, Cic. ad Lent. *Na-* ^{less a Sign}
ves onerarias, quarum minor nulla erat ^{of the Gen.}
duum millium amphorarum, Not less than
Two Thousand Tun. And. Id. ad Heren.
l. 3. *Intervallo locorum mediocria esse oportet,*

tes, fore paulo plus aut minus pedum tricennum; but then mensura or numera seems to be understood.

Note 8. If *than* comes after a Comparative, and before another Adjective, that latter Adjective also must be turn'd into a Comparative of the same Case with the former: As, *The Triumph was more pleasing than glorious, Triumphus gratior quam clarior*, Liv. l. 5. *Rex quoque fuit avidior quam patientior*, Curt. l. 5. c. 7.

EL. 12. with express before Manner of doing, tho' it does not signify together with.

There is but one Case where *with* is sometimes express, when it cannot be turn'd into *together with*; and that is when *Manner of doing* is signified; As, *Historia scripta cum multa venustate*, A. Gell. l. 1. c. 23. *Quorum pars cum cruciati necabatur*, Cæli. B. G. l. 5. *Ut in Cecinnam cum ferro invaderet*, Cic. where *ferrum* don't so much signify the Instrument, as the *Manner of doing*. That he should sit upon Cecinna in such a Posture; namely, with *Stoord in Hand*.

Note 2. But *cum* is often omitted when it denotes *Company*; and that 1st, after *simul* together; (a) 2^{dly}, when *Concomitany* may be consider'd, as *Manner of doing*; (b) 3^{dly}, in *Descriptions*; (c) 4^{thly}, before an Ablative commonly said to be put absolute; (d) 5^{thly}, after *conjungo* *misceo*, &c. (e) 6^{thly}, before *commo-*
dum, *convenience*. (f)

(a) *Stimul his te candido Furni*, Hor. l. 1. Sat. 10. *Cum hi pullo amittu simul filio Perseu*, Liv. (b) This is most remarkable after the Verb stand; as, Virg. *Æn* 6. *Stant lumina flamma*, *His Eyes stand with a Flame*. *Cernimus astantes nequicquam lumine torvo Æneus fratres*, Id. *Quales cum vorrice celsa aëria queramus aut cornifera cyparissi constituerunt*, Id. *Æn*. 3. *Stat ferri acies mucrone cærusco*, Virg. *Vides ut alta stet nive candidum socæte*, Hor. (c) *Ducit Amazonidum lunatis agmina pelvis Penthesilea furens*, Virg. *Revertor masius, atque animo ferè perturbato*, Ter. *Heaut*. 1. 1. in which *Cum* is found express among the Ancients, but not to be imitated: Thus *Vir cum magna fide*, is in Plautus, and *Optima cum pulchris animis Romana juvenus*, is in Ennius. (d) *Insequitur commisso grandine nimbus*, Virg. A Shower follows with Hail mingled. (e) *Ea summa miseria est summo dedecore conjuncta*, Cic. *Lactea Massagetes qui pocula sanguine miscet*, Sen. *Oed* p. Act. 2. *Chor. Oppidani picem volvere, sulphure & tæda mistam*, Sal. B. Jug. *Mycone celsa, Gyroque revinxit*, Virg. *Æn*. 3. (f) If it may be done with the Convenience of the Commonwealth, *Si Repub. commodo fieri potest*, Cæsar B. G. l. 5.

Cum signifying together with is also sometimes omitted by Latin Authors, in Imitation of the Greek. Thus Sophocles in *Ajax* has, *Ευείκομεν δέας καλλωεισμένας αὐλοῖς ποικύων ἐπιστάτοις*, *Invenimus prædas una cum ipsis pastoribus interfectas*; and Aristophanes in *Plut*. *Ὅπως ἂν ἴσων ἔκας & ἐπ' αὐτοῖς παρὼν ἡμῖν μέλας ἡ σῶς & ἡ πλεῖστε μέσθ*, 1. 2. *Una nobiscum participaret has divitias*; in Imitation of which we find in Flor. l. 2. c. 6. *Ut vento, pulvere, sole pugnarent*, in Propert. l. 2. Ecl. 9. *Assidue*

atque meo sanguine Bella gerit, in Cæsar. B. G. l. 5. Ad Cæsarem omnibus copiis contendunt, in Sal. Jug. c. 90. Bellum populo Romano neque feci, neque factum valui, in Tac. Ann. l. 15. Ipsum adversus duas Legiones totis regni viribus advenisse, in Hor. Od. 5. l. 3. Milesne Crassi conjugum barbara turpis maritus vixit, in Virg. Æn. 9. v. 765. Addit confixum Ihegea parma. Pierced thro' together with his Shield, in Hor. l. 1. Od. 31. Quam turpi Pholoe peccet adultero. And again, Epod. 6. Adulteretur & columba milvio.

Most of these Verbs, viz. *Fungor, fruor, fungor, fruor, abutor, supersedeo, potior, careo, egeo,* are sometimes found in good Authors, especially the more Ancient, with an Accusative; as, *Ita tute attente illorum officia fungere, Ter. Heaut. 1. 1. Fruitur hanc alternas noctes, Plaut. Præmensa defunctus tempora lucis, Tib. Mea quæ præter spern evenerunt utantur sine, Ter. Adel. 5. 3. Operam abutitur, Ter. Prol. Andr. Cognati & affines operam quæm dare rogati sunt supersederunt, A. Gell. l. 2. c. 29. Ille alter sine labore patria potitur commodæ, Ter. Adelph. 5. 4. Id quod amo careo, Plaut. Curc. 1. 2. Alter (collis) usui opportunus quia magna parte editus, & præcepta paucâ munimenta egebat. Sal. Jug. c. 98. Nec quicquam eges, Plaut. Men. 1. 2. Vitio vertunt quia multa egeo, A. Gell. l. 13. c. 22. Of these *supersedeo* has also a Da-*

On Id. 1.

Note 1.

fungor,

fruor, u-

tor, &c.

found with

an Accusat.

a Dative in *Hi t. Postquam eos superse-* superse-
dere pugna animadvertit. deo Dat.

Vaco has sometimes the Preposition *a* Note 3.
expressed after it; as, *Qua & a nimia vaco* Ab-
pulchritudinis periculo, & *a summa deor* lat with a.
mitatis odio vacat, A. Gell. l. 5. c. 11

This Ablative absolute after having On Id. 3.
before a Participle Passive, may be va Ablat. ab-
ried into a Subjunctive Mood with *cum*, solute va-
and so *acceptis obsidibus* may be turn'd ried by a
into *cum accepisset obsides* Subjunct.
with *cum*.

The Ablative absolute, when the On Id. 4.
Participle *after* or *after that* comes be- this Ablat.
fore it, may be turn'd into an Accusa- turn'd into
tive with *post*; as, *Ipsam illic Apollinem* an Accusat.
post interfectos Cyclopus Jovis iram vita- with *post*.
viffe, Tac Ann. l. 3. After that the Cy-
clops were slain.

P R O N O U N S.

NOTES on Chap. IX.

The Rule of the Interrogative.

THIS Rule is not to be followed Part 3.
when the Question is ask'd by Note 1.
Cuius, *a*, *um*, or when the Question
and Answer come under two different
Rules.

T

IF

Note 2. If the Particle *any* or *ever*, put for *any* or *ever* by *ecquis* or *nunquid*.
 any be in the Interrogative Sentence, the *Latins* usually ask the Question by *ecquis* or *nunquid*; as, *Does any one live more fortunate than I? Ecquis me vivit fortunatior? Ter. Does our Antiochus approve of any of these Things? Nunquid horum probat Antiochus? Cic. Whether I have any Estate at Sunium? Rus Sunii ecquod habeam? Ter. Eun.*

Note 3. If the Word to which *ne* is joyned end with the Letter *c*, the Syllable *ci* is commonly first added; as, *siccine*, not *ficne*, *hiccine*, not *hicne*, *isticcine*, not *isticne*. Yet *Statius*, *Theb* l. i. has, *Hancne Ogygis ait, aspera rebus fata tulere vicem? And Hicne unquam privatus erit? Ibid.*

Note 4. Sometimes the Interrogative Particle is quite omitted in *Latin*, as it is in *English*; as, *Non tu hunc habeas plane deum? Ter. Phorm.*

NOTES on Chap. X.

The Rule of the Possessive.

*Princ.
Rule.
first Part*

BECAUSE the Use of the Possessive is to express a Genitive Case of the Primitive, therefore if any Noun depends upon an Adjective Possessive by Apposition, as belonging to the same Thing,

Thing, it must be put in the Genitive *The Gen Case*; as in that of *Virg. Æn. 12. Postquam arma dei ad vulcania ventum est.* *Case after an Adject. Possessive.* *Vulcania dei,* Of Vulcan the God; but more frequently after Pronouns Possessive; as, *Post tuum iudicium viri eruditissimi,* Plin. *Tuum hominis simplicis pectus vidimus,* Cic. *Quis meas misere deus juvare flammæ queat,* Sen. Hip. Act. 1.

But especially if after any of these Pronouns *Mens, tuus,* &c. there follow any of these Adjectives, *Self, alone, only,* *Note 4. especially after Pronouns Possessive.* *few, all, two, three,* &c. as if I should say, *The Misfortunes of myself, and the Cruelty of others, have brought this Poverty upon me,* I may render it, *Mea ipsius infortunia:* So, *This was effected by the Endeavors of us Two,* it may be *Nostrum duorum conatibus hoc effectum est,* but is better *Nostris duorum conatibus.* Thus Tully, *Dico mea unius opera Remipub. esse liberatam;* and *Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest;* and Brut. ad Cic. *Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus.*

If *qui* comes after any of the Possessives *mens, tuus,* &c. *qui* will require such a Person after it as the several *Pri*mitives would do, from whence the Possessives are deriv'd; as after *mens* a first Person, as being deriv'd from *ego,* after *tuus* a second, as deriv'd from *tu,* and so on; as in Ter. Andr. *Omnes lau-*

Note 5. qui after a Pronoun Possessive.

dare fortunam meas quam filium haberem tali ingenio praeclitum.

Note 6. This Verb with *qui* is sometimes turn'd into a Participle amongst the Poets, and being so turn'd, is always put in the Genitive Case; as it instead of *qui filium* *habere*m. I should say, *filium habentis*. Thus Hor. Sat. 2. l. 1. *Cum mea non o scripta legat vulgo recitare timentis.* And Ovid Ep. *Ut mea deuncta molliter offa cubent*; an Orator would rather say, *Qui timeam*, or *quae cefuncta sum*.

Princ. Sometimes of me, of thee, of us, &c. are rendred by *meus tuus, noster*, &c.

Rule when they cannot well be turn'd into mine, thine, ours, &c. as in that of Ter.

Note 7 of me, of thee, &c. rendred by *meus, tuus* &c. when they cannot be turn'd into mine, thine, &c.

Imag. *tui* turn'd into *Imago tua*.

Imag. *tui* turn'd into *Imago tua*.

Imag. *tui* turn'd into *Imago tua*.

Imag. *tui* turn'd into *Imago tua*.

Imag. *tui* turn'd into *Imago tua*.

Imag. *tui* turn'd into *Imago tua*.

Imag. *tui* turn'd into *Imago tua*.

Imag. *tui* turn'd into *Imago tua*.

Likewise Epist. ad Luceium, l. 5. Neque fictam imaginem suam passus est esse. And some-

Sometimes on the contrary the Primi-^{on the con-}
 tive is used, when it can be turn'd into ^{trary me-}
 mine, thine, instead of the Possessive; ^{us, thus,}
 but that is rare. Thus *Plant.* in *Pseud.* 1. 1. ^{&c. rarely}
Duorum labori ego hominum parvissem lu- ^{turn'd into}
mei, tui, ^{us, thus,}
mei te rogavi, & tui respondendi, &c.
nibi Labori mei, my Labor. Vid. A.
 Gell. 1. 20. c. 6.

I shall add but one Remark more un- ^{Note 8.}
 der this Head; and that is, that the
 Possessives *meus, tuus, suus, &c.* are ve- ^{meus, tu-}
 ry often omitted in the *Latin*, where ^{us, suus,}
 there can be no Alteration of the Sense, ^{&c. often}
 occasioned by the Omission; as in that ^{omitted in}
 of *Ovid*, *In nova fert animus mutatas di-* ^{the Latin.}
cere formas, i. e. meus animus. So *Ter.*
Andr. 2. 3. *Pater est Pamphile, difficile*
est, i. e. tuus pater. So in *Salust's* De-
 scription of *Caecilius*, *Corpus patiens in-*
dia, animus audax, & subdolanus, i. e. suum
or ejus corpus, suus animus. For when a
 Man is speaking of himself, and the Sense
 requires a Possessive, we in course sup-
 pose it to be *meus*, if one be speaking
 to another, to be *tuus*, if one be speak-
 ing of another, to be *suum*, and of the
 Omission of the Possessives in these Cases,
 Instances abound in Authors.

NOTES on Chap. XI.

The Rule of the Reciprocals.

Note 1.
Reciprocals
not always
used in the
Case of a
single Re-
ciprocation.

or when
two Verbs
follow one
another
within the
Period.

IT is certain Authors do not strictly tie themselves up to this Rule in the Case of a single Reciprocation; that is, where there is but one Antecedent substantive for the Reciprocal to have Relation to, and so the making *eius* or *eorum* for *suus*, or *ille* for *sui*, can cause no Mistake in the Sense; especially where two Verbs so follow one another, within the Period, as that the Reciprocal belongs to the latter Verb, and the Noun, to which it reciprocates, belongs to the former: As, *Petrus obnixè rogat, ne se deseras*; no doubt it would be good, if I should say, *ne illum deseras*. Thus Quint Decl. 3. *Neque ignoravit, quæ manerent eum supplicia*. So Decl. 1. in some Editions, *Non petit ut illum miserum putetis, nisi & innocens fuerit*.

Note 2.
each other
or one an-
other by *se*
mutuo or
se invi-
cem.
or by *alius*
or *alter*
twice re-
peated.

The Words *each other* or *one another* after a Verb of the Third Person are Reciprocals, having always Reference to the Case or Cases that stand before the Verb, and are commonly rendred by *se*, with the Addition of *mutuo* or *invicem*, or else (which is more usual) by *alius* or *alter* twice repeated in their proper Cases, i. e. such as the Verb, or other

other Word to which they belong, requires before and after it; as, *Water and Ice beget each other, Aqua & glacies se mutuo* or *altera alteram gignunt Quod alius alii tanti acinoris confecti*, Sal. Cat. 22.

Alia aliam scandit, They climb upon one another, Plaut. Pseud. 1. 1. Sometimes by *invicem* without *se*; as, *Thracia invicem metuentes*, Just. 1. 8. c. 3. Sometimes by *se* without *invicem*; as, *Pergis pugnantia secum frontibus adversis componere*, Hor. Sat. 1. L. 1. Sometimes by *inter se*; as, *Quo inter se magis fidi forent*, Sal. Cat. 22.

That they might be more faithful to one another. *Nostri hortati inter se*, Cæs. B. G. 1. 4 par. 25. Having exhorted one another or each other.

Especially if it be one with another, or with each other; it is commonly rendred by *inter se*; as in that of Cicero, *Delectat hoc quod inter se omnes partes corporis quodam lepore consentiunt*: Agree one with another. Yet if the said Particles tol-

low a Noun, Linacer observes that 'tis more elegant to turn *inter se* into *inter ipsos*; thus Quint. *Circa quem inextricabilis & Grammaticis inter ipsos & Philosophis pugna*: Difference with each other: The same Linacer observes that Tully has used *istos* in this Case; as, *Una spes est salutis istorum inter istos dissensio*, but thinks it should be *ipsos*.

Note 3. Under this general head of Pronoun I shall further take Notice by way of Appendix, that Grammarians observe a Difference between *ille* and *iste*, as to their Use, tho' of the same Signification as *ille* is used when we speak of a Person or Thing with Respect, and *iste* when we speak with Contempt.

Ille used
Respect is
signified,
iste when
Contempt.

Note 4. Again it is observ'd, that *hic* and *ille* as they have a different Signification one signifying *that*, and the other *this* so they are more particularly made Use of, when two Persons or Things be mention'd together in a Sentence, which we have occasion afterwards to mention singly, expressing them by *this* and *that*, the one and the other, the former and the latter; in that Case *this*, the one, the latter, agrees with the latter Substantive, and is rendred by *hic*; *that*, the other, the former, agrees with the former of the two Substantives, and is rendred by *ille*; as in that of Columella quoted by Liliy, *Agricola contrarium est pastoris propositum: ille quam maxime subacto & puro solo gaudet, hic novali graminosoque: ille fructum terra sperat, hic e pecore.*

this, the
one, the
latter, rendered by
hic.
that, the
other, the
former by
ille.

Note 5. This indeed is often observ'd in Prose, but in Verse rather quite the contrary; as, Ovid. de Trist. Eleg. 2. *Quocunque aspicio nihil est nisi pontus & aer. Fluctibus hic tumidus, nubibus ille minax.*

this is observ'd only
in Prose,
in Verse
the quite
contrary.

The same is sometimes exprest by *ille* Sometimes they are exprest by *ille* twice repeated, as, Ter. Phorm. 2. 2. *Quia enim in illis fructus est, in illis opera luditur.* So Ovid. *Venerunt ad te Telamone & Amyntore nati.* *Ille gradu propior sanguinis ille comes.* And sometimes by *hic* by *hic* twice repeated; as, Hor. L. 1. Ep. 17. *Hic onus horret, hic subit & perfert.*

Sometimes by *alter* twice repeated; sometimes as, *Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem & urbis, quorum alter se scientia augere potest, altera exemplis,* Cic. Offic. 1. *Eorum Amphitrionis alter est, alter Jovis,* Plaut. Amph. 1. 2.

NOTES on Chap. XII.

The Case of Verbs compounded with a Preposition.

After *Abhorreo* the Preposition is always repeated in Latin, tho' commonly omitted in English; as, *Abhorret ab re uxoria,* Ter. He abhors Marriage. *Abhorreo ab Atticis,* Pl. Merc. 5. 1. *Egredior, erumpo, evado, eveho, excedo, exeo, exilio,* are sometimes found with an Accusative instead of an Ablative.

Part 4.

Princip. Rule.

Note 1. *abhorreo* repeats its Preposit.

Note 2. these Verbs take an Accusat.

Egresso cubiculum Eruto, Val. Max. Fandudum egredior erumpere nubem ardebant, Virg. Aen. 1. Simul erumpo primi agminis copia evasere sylvas, Tac. Unde sa- evado ma ejus evehta insulas, & proximas provincias eva- evebo, eva- gata, Tac. Ann. l. 12. Patriosque excedere muros, got, excedo

U

Luc.

Note 3. Under this general head of Pronoun I shall further take Notice by way of Appendix, that Grammarians observe a Difference between *ille* and *iste*, as to their Use, tho' of the same Signification as *ille* is used when we speak of a Person or Thing with Respect, and *iste* when we speak with Contempt.

Ille used
Respect is
signified.
iste when
Contempt.

Note 4. Again it is observ'd, that *hic* and *ille* as they have a different Signification one signifying *that*, and the other *this* so they are more particularly made Use of, when two Persons or Things be mention'd together in a Sentence, which we have occasion afterwards to mention singly, expressing them by *this* and *that*, the one and the other, the former and the latter; in that Case *this*, the one, the latter, agrees with the latter Substantive, and is rendred by *hic*; *that*, the other, the former, agrees with the former of the two Substantives, and is rendred by *ille*; as in that of Columella quoted by Lili, *Agricola contrarium est pastoris propositum: ille quam maxime subacto & puro solo gaudet, hic novali graminosoque: ille fructum terra sperat, hic e pecore.*

this, the
one, the
latter, ren-
dred by
hic.
that, the
other, the
former by
ille.

Note 5. This indeed is often observ'd in Prose, but in Verse rather quite the contrary; as, Ovid. de Trist. Eleg. 2. *Quocunque aspicio nihil est nisi pontus & aer. Fluctibus hic tumidus, nubibus ille minax.*

this is ob-
serv'd only
in Prose,
in Verse
the quite
contrary.

The same is sometimes exprest by *ille* ^{Sometimes they are} twice repeated; as, Ter. Phorm. 2. 2. ^{exprest by} *Quia enim in illis fructus est, in illis opera* ^{ille twice} *luditur.* So Ovid. *Venerunt ad te Tela-* ^{repeated,} *mone & Amyntore nati. Ille gradu propior* ^{sometimes} *sanguinis ille comes.* And sometimes by *hic* ^{by hic.} *hic* twice repeated; as, Hor L. i. Ep. 17.

Hic onus horret, hic subit & perfert

Sometimes by *alter* twice repeated; ^{sometimes} as, *Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem* ^{by alter.} *& urbis, quorum alter te scientia augere potest, altera exemplis,* Cic. Offic. i. *Eorum Amphitrionis alter est, alter Jovis,* Plaut. Amph. i. 2.

NOTES on Chap XII.

The Case of Verbs compounded with a Preposition.

After *Abhorreo* the Preposition is ^{Princip.} always repeated in Latin, tho' ^{Rule.} commonly omitted in English; as, *Abhorret ab re uxoria,* Ter. He abhors Marriage. *Abhorreo ab Atticis,* Pl. Merc. 5. 1. ^{Note 1.} *Egredior, erumpo, evado, eveho, excedo, exeo,* ^{abhorreo} *exilio,* are sometimes found with an Accusative instead of an Ablative. ^{repeats its} ^{Preposit.} ^{Note 2.} ^{these Verbs} ^{take an} ^{Accusar.}

Egresso cubiculum Bruto, Val. Max. *Famdudum egredior* *erumpere nubem ardebant,* Virg. Æn. i. *Simul erumpo primi agminis copia evasere sylvas,* Tac. *Unde sa-* ^{evado} *ma ejus evehta insulas, & proximas provincias eva-* ^{eveho, eva-} *gata,* Tac. Ann. l. 12. *Patriosque excedere muros,* ^{gor, excedo}

exco

Luc. Jam ut limen exirem, ad genua accidit; Ter.
Hec. 3. 3. Ubi frater iunx, Elec. exiit Mycenae,
Sen. Ag. act. 5. Exiit Cathedram, Plin. L. 3.
Ep. 16. Evagor does the same in Horace, L. 4.
Od. 15. Et ordinem rectum evaganti frana licentiae

but this *e* inject; which is a much better reading than
or *exiit* *Evaganti*, as it is in some Editions; but then
for extra. this *e* is said to be put for extra.

On Id.

The Uncertainty of the Government
first Part of compound Verbs is so great, that it
is impossible to contrive such a Rule, as
shall comprehend all Cases, since some
Verbs are contented with the Case of
the Preposition with which they are
compounded; others again will have the
Preposition with which they are com-
pounded repeated after them; while
others will accept of no Case but a Da-
tive: And therefore Dictionaries have
provided for this Difficulty in some
Measure by setting down after a Com-
pound Verb the Case that it governs.
Yet for the Ease of the Learner, that he
might not at every Turn be forc'd to
consult his Dictionary, I shall endeavor
to reduce the Government of these
Verbs to as few general Rules and Ex-
ceptions as the Case will bear, by set-
ting down the several Prepositions men-
tion'd in the Idiomatical Rule, as they
there stand, together with their more
usual Government in Composition.

1. Ad,

All Verbs compounded with *Ad*, may
have the Dative, except these following,
which

Of Verbs compounded with a Preposit.

155

which govern an Accusative, viz. *Accolo*; *adhortor* with *ad* repeated; *admoneo*, *affor*, *appello*, -as; *appello*, -is, with *ad*, to apply; *appendo* with *ad*, to hang; *appeto*, *aspicio*; *aspiro* with *ad*, to aspire, aim at, or come to; *astituo* with *ad*; *attraho* with *ad*. But then most of those that govern a Dative will sometimes change it into an Accusative with or without *ad*.

Verbs compounded of *Con* may all 2. *Con*. have an Ablative with *cum*; however some of them are found with a Dative, viz. *Coeo*; *colloquor*, (the last rarely an Accusat.) *comparo*, (or Accusat. with *ad*;) *commisceo*, *compono*, *concino*, *concurro*, *confundo*; *congregior*, (or Accusat. in *Plaut. Epid. 4. 1.*) *conjunga*, *consentio*, *consero*, *contendo*, *convenio*, to agree with.

Verbs compounded of *Circum* may all 3. *Circum*. have an Accusative, except *circumpono* and *circumjaceo*, which admit of a Dative only, and *circumligo*, *circumscribo*, *circundo*, which require a Dative of the Person only when the Thing is put in the Accusative; as *Pliny* speaking of a certain Herb, says, *It is wholesome to tye it about Infants*; instead of *Infantes ea*, he says, *Infantibus eam circumligare salutare est*.

Verbs compounded with *In* all require 4. *In*. a Dative, except these following, which require an Accusative only; *impello* with

in; *impendo* with *in*; *impugno*; *incido* with *in*; *inclinō* with *in* or *ad*; *incumbo* with *in* or *ad*, to study; *increpo*; *induresco* with *in*; *inflo*, *influo*, *ingredior*; *ingurgito* with *in*; *inquiro* with *in*; *inscendo*, *insideo*, to besiege; *inspuo* with *in*; *inspicio*, *insto*; *insisto*, with *iter* or *via*; *insurgo* with *in*; *intueor*, *inveho*, *invehor*, *invoco*; *involo*, with *in*; *irrepro* with *in*; *irrideo*; *irruo*, with *in*. But then most of those that govern a Dative will change it into an Accusative with *in*, sometimes without; and sometimes into an Ablative with or without *in*.

5. *Inter*. All Verbs compounded of *Inter* govern an Accusative with *inter* repeated. Except some few that require only a Dative; namely, *Intercludo commeatum hostibus*; which may be chang'd into *hostes commeatu*; *intermisceo*, *interpono*, if but one casual Word follow; *interfero*; *intervenio*, rarely an Accusative; *intercedo* if *cum* follow for &; as, *Quam justa causa necessitudinis ipsis cum Aduis intercederent*, CæL. or *Inter ipsos & Aduos*. *Interstrepo* Accusat. without *inter*; *interjaceo* Accusat. with or without, or Dative; *interfluo* Accus. with or without the Preposition.

6. *Super*. Verbs compounded of *Super* do all govern an Accusat. Except *Supercresco*, *supercurro*, *superfluo*, *superfundo*, *superjacio* or *-jicio*, *superpingo*, *superpono*, *superjcdens*,

sedens, superstruo, supersto, supervenio, to surprize; supervivo; all which have commonly a Dative.

All Verbs compounded of *Ante* com- 7. *Ante*. monly take a Dative, except *antegredior*, and *antevolo* which require an Accusat. only. But then some few, namely, *antecedo, anteco, antevenio, anteverto, antesto*, sometimes change their Dative into an Accusative.

Verbs compounded of *Ob*, take com- 8. *Ob*. monly a Dative, except *obambulo* commonly Accusat. but sometimes a Dative, *obeo* Accusat. or Ablat. of *mors*, *obsequio* Accusat. sometimes Dative, *oblarro* Accusat. sometimes a Dative, *obsero* Accusat. *obrepo* a Dat. or Accusat. *Plant. Pan Prol. obumbro* Accusat. rarely a Dat. *Occumbere morti, Virg. Necem, Suet. Morte, Liv. Oppeto* Accusat. of *mors* or *pestis*, *Plaut. Af. 1. 1.*

All Verbs compounded of *Sub* will 9. *Sub*. take a Dative, except two, namely, *subeo*, to undergo, or go into, and *suggredior* in *Tac.* to come upon by surprize, take only an Accusat. But then several of them that govern a Dat. will turn it into an Accusat. viz. *subeo*, to go under or to come into ones Mind; as, *Tecta subibant pauperis Evandri, Virg. Æn. 8. Quod subierit oculos senatus, Tac. Ann. 1. 4. Aenea subiit micronem Lausus, Virg. Æn. 1. 9. went under; once Ablat. in Stat. 1. Theb.*

Of Verbs compounded with a Preposit.

Theb. v. 406. *Subit uno tegmine.* So *Subit mihi* or *me*, *animo* or *animum*: It comes into my Mind. *Subdo* Accus. with *sub*; *subrepo* with or without *sub*; *subjicio* with *sub*; *subjungo* with *sub*; *submitto* with *ad*; *succedo*, to go under; *suppono* with *sub*.

10. *Præ.* Any Verbs compounded of *Præ* may have a Dative; except *præcedo*, to go before; *prægravo*, *præminco*, *prævenio*, *præverto*, --or, to outrun; and Verbs compounded of *præ* put for *præter*; as, *prælabor*, *prænato*, *præfluo*, *prælego*, to pass by; all which take an Accus. only. But then some of those that govern a Dat. will sometimes change it into an Accusat. namely, *præcedo*, to excell; *præcurro*, *præjaceo* and *præsto*, if an Ablat. follow. Virgil has used an Accusat. without an Ablat. *Æn.* l. 11. *Ibo animis contra: vel magnum præstet Achiliem*; but then *viribus*, or some such Word is said to be understood. Vid. Cooper. *Præverto*, to prefer, sometimes repeats the Preposition, thus *Plaut. Amph.* 1. 3. *Ne me uxorem prævertisse dicant præ Repub. præco*, has sometimes an Accusat. but then it is of the Thing, and then there is always a Dative of the Person exprest or understood; as in *Pliny*, *Pax tu nobis sanctissimum illud carmen præire dignatus es. Agendum* (says *Livy*) *præi verba, quibus me pro Legionibus deprecam, sc. præi mihi*; and then

Of Verbs compounded with a Preposit. 159

then praire signifies to pronounce certain Words that another is to say after you.

Verbs compounded of *Contra*, being 11. *Contra* but two, viz. *contradico* and *contraeo*, have always a Dative, unless *contravenio* may be reckon'd one entire Word, and that has always an Accusative.

Therefore we find *supero* once in *Virgil* with a Dative, because put for *superum*, *Aen. 2. Capta superavimus urbi.* *superum* for *superum* *Dat.*

But tho' the Compounds of *Sum* with a Preposition may all have a Dative, yet that Dative is often turn'd into the Case which the Preposition governs; as we may say, *adesse urbe* or *ab urbe*, as well as *urbi*. *Adesse ad portum, in aliquo loco, in amore hac insunt vitia, Ter. Interesse in convivio, interesse in eadem non potui, Cic.* And always after *interesse* there is a Difference, if two casual Words follow. *Inter Bellum & hominem hoc maxime interest,* there is chiefly this Difference. *Seneca* has left out *inter*, *Nihil interest hos & illa, nisi divisim legas.* And *A. Gell. l. 11. c. 5.* has, *In quid & quantum Pyrrhonios & academicos Philosophos inter sit.*

Terence has turn'd the Accusat. with *inter* into a Nominat. *Adel. 1. 1. Hoc dominus & pater interest.* But if there be only one casual Word after *interesse* in this sense, it must always have a Dat. as, *Scuto intelligens quid interest? Ter.*

NOTES

NOTES on Chap. XIII.

Of the Verb Impersonal.

Imperso-
nals some-
time of all
Persons.

SOME Verbs reckon'd in the Number of Impersonals, as being commonly so, are nevertheless found sometimes in all Persons, namely, *Placeo*, *displaceo*, *doleo*, and *convenio*, to agree; others also occur, but much more rarely; as, *Loquere tui nomen nisi piges*, Plaut. *Ita nunc pudeo atque paveo*, Id. Cas. 5. 2.

Note 2.

Indeed we often meet with *vaco* and *juvo* in all Persons, but then they are commonly of a different Signification from *vacat* and *juvat*; as, *Vaco Philosophia*, signifies *I mind or study Philosophy*; *Vacant agri*, the *Fields are empty*; but *vacat* with a Dative of the Person expressed or understood, signifies *I am at Leisure*: Tho' even that is sometimes

turn'd into a Verb Personal; as, Hor. l. 2. Ep. 2. *Mox etiam si forte vacas*, *sequere & procul audi*, for *vacat tibi*.

Note 3.

most of the
Imperso-
nals found
with a
Nominat.
and often
in the plu-
ral numb.

Juvo always signifies *to help*, never *to delight*, but in the Third Person singular or plural; in which Persons it is very usual to find not only that, but most of the Verbs Impersonal with a Nominative Case before them; as, *Quod licet ingratum est*, Ovid. *Illud interest Ciceronis: hoc refert mea*, Cic. Ep. *Quod*

nos post pigeat, Ter. Phorm. 3. 3. Non
te hæc puaent, Id. Adelph. 4. 7. Semper
metuit quem scire pudebunt Luc. Quæ
adolem, quæque oportent signa ad salutem
esse omnia huic video, in all the old Edi-
tions, Ter. Andr. 3. 2. Non omnes ar-
busta juvant Virg. Omnia cum liceant,
non licet esse pium, Ovid. Inde quasi om-
nia quæ agitasset animo, ei licerent Just.
l. 8. c. 3. Jamque omnes finem cuperent,
verbisque ejus defatigati percreduissent, A.
Gell. l. 1. c. 2.

On the contrary, these Verbs follow- *Note*
ing that are commonly Personal, are *videor*,
sometimes found Impersonal, namely, *vereor*,
Videor, *vereor*, *misereor*. Thus Cicero, *misereor*,
Non videtur ad beate vivendum satis esse *sometimes*
virtutem, for *virtus videtur*, L. 5. Tulc. *Impersonal*
And again contra Rull. *Legemque his*
rebus, quam ipsis videretur, edicerent. And
again, pro Rabir. *Ut consules adhiberent*
Tribunos plebis & Praetores quos iis videretur.
Primum Aristippi cynicorumque om-
nium quos non verum in ea voluptate que
maxima dulcedine sensum moveret, sum-
mm bonum ponere, Cic. de fin. l. 2. *Ca-*
vete, fratrum pro fratris salute precantium
vos misereatur pro Ligar.

Juvar, decet, oportet did anciently *Note 5.*
turn their Acculative into a Dative; *juvar, de-*
therefore we find Ita tibi juvar, in Plaut. cet, oport-
Ut vobis decet, in Ter. Adel. 3. 3. Ho-
mini servo suos domitos habere oportet ocu-
take a

Of To before the Verb.

los, Plaut. and *convenit* its Dative into an Accusative; as, *Ætatem aliam aliud factum convenit*, Plaut. Merc. 5. 4

NOTES on Chap. XIV.

Of To before the Verb.

Princip.

Rule

Part 1.

to rendred
by a Parti-
ciple of the
Præter
Tense after

volo, &c.

and after

curo by

either that

or a Future

in *duo*.

After *Volo*, *nolo*, *cupio*, *oportet*, &c. amongst Dramatick Poets, the latter Verb is rendred sometimes by a Participle of the Præter Tense, instead of an Infinitive; and after *curo*, either by a Participle of the Præter Tense, or Future in *duo*.

Quamobrem omnes vos oratos volo, Ter. Prol. Heaut. *Volo amori obsecutum illius*, for obsequi, Plaut. Af. 1. 1. *Sunt qui volunt te conventam*, Id. Cist. 4. 2. *Dii me servatum volunt*, Id. Men. 5. 9. *Sane nollem huc exitum*, Ter. Adel. 5. 1. *Cupit te conventum*, Plaut. Curc. 2. 3. *Ut ut erat, mansum tamen oportuit*, Ter. Heaut. 1. 2. *Aurem admodum oportuit*, Plaut. Mil. 4. 8. *Facile ventum ut gaudeam*, Id. Curc. 2. 3. *Fam ubi ubi erit inventum tibi curabo*, & *mecum adductum tuum Pamphilum*, Ter. Andr. 4. 2. *Cura asservandum vindictum*, Id. Andr. 5. 2. *Palinurus petit ab Ænea ut suum corpus requirendum & sepeliendum cures*, A. Geil. 1. 10. 16. *Antequam vitellius suis artibus id perpetrandum jumpsi*, Tac. undertook, Ann. 12. p. 225.

Part 2.

that before
a Nominat.
and a Verb
better left
out than
made by
and, the

The Accusative Case coming between two Verbs, or before the Infinitive Mood, may be resolv'd into the Conjunction *that*, and a Nominative before a Finite Mood; as, *I know the Earth is round*, or *to be round*, or *that the Earth is round*, and

is often so-express'd in *English*; however *Nominative*
 it is always most elegant (where it may *being*
 be done) to turn such a Nominative in- *turn'd into*
 to an Accusative, and the Verb into an *an Accusat.*
 Infinitive Mood; that is, where the *and the*
 Particle *that* can be left out in *English* *Verb into*
 without hurting the Sense: When that *an Infinit.*
 may be done, we will consider by and by. *Mood.*

Sometimes the former Verb is omit- *Note 2.*
 ted thro' the Earnestness of the Speaker,
 as, *Haccine fieri flagitia. Tantumne rem tam*
negligenter agere, Ter. where *par est,*
aquum est, credibile est, and the like is
 understood.

And tho' the former of the two Verbs *Note 3:*
 governs a Dative; yet if an Infinitive *If a Verb*
 follows, it is lawful (says *Priscian*, p 264) *govern a*
 to use an Accusative. Thus Ter. Heaut. *Dat and*
 4. 3. *Si licet me tecto latere abscedere.* *an Infinit.*
Latius considerare Teucros, Virg. *Æn.* 6. *Me* *follow, that*
liceat casum misereri infantis amici, Virg. *Dat. may*
Æn. 1. 5. The Reason is plain, because *be turn'd*
 there are always two Cases between *into an*
 every Verb that governs a Dative and *Accusat.*
 its following Infinitive Mood. So *Placet*
me facere, express'd entire, is *placet mihi*
me facere. So you are left at Liberty to
 leave out either the Dative or the Ac-
 cusative. Hence it commonly happens
 that there are two Cases before the In-
 finitive Mood, express'd or understood;
 one belonging to the former Verb, and
 the other preceding the latter, i. e. the

what Case
must fol-
low an In-
finitive
that hath
two diffe-
rent Cases
before it.

Infinitive Mood; as, *In hypocrita cupit se videri justum*: *Videri* has a Nominative and an Accusative. *In expedit vobis vos esse bonos*: *Esse* has before it a Dative and an Accusative. Now because all Verbs Passive and Neuter have the same Case after them, that they have before them, hence a Question will arise, which of the two Cases before the Infinitive Mood shall determine the Case after the Infinitive, being a Verb Neuter or Passive, especially if one of the Cases before the Infinitive (as it most commonly happens) be omitted. Let your Rule in that Case be this; If both Cases be express'd before the Infinitive, then it is plain the following Case must be determin'd by that Case that stands nearest before the Infinitive; as *Hypocrita cupit se videri justum*. But if there be a Nominative Case to which the Noun following the Infinitive has Relation, and no Accusative express'd, then make the said Noun of the Nominative; as, *Hypocrita cupit videri justus*. *Amens mihi fuisse videor*, Cic. but if no such Nominative, then either make it of the Accusative Case, which is the usual way of the Latins; or else in the Case of the Word express'd, which is more according to the Greeks; as, *Expedit vobis esse bonos* or *bonis*. *Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit*, Hor. or *beatos*. *Est pueri esse obedientem*, or *obedientis*.

lientis. But if there be no Case at all
express'd before the Infinitive, then make
the Case following the Infinitive either
Accusative or Dative, as you please; as,
Atqui licet esse beatos, or beatu, Hor. Li-
ceat esse mihi cius, or miseros, Cic.

There are some few Instances in Au- Note 4.
thors, where the Conjunction *that* is a Nominat.
left out, and the Verb following turn'd before the
into an Infinitive, and yet the Noun Infinit.
between the two Verbs is not turn'd
into an Accusative in Imitation of the
Greeks; as, *Sen plus Aeneas eripuisse se-*
runt, Ovid. Phaeclus ille quem videtis, ait,
fuisse omnium celerimus, Cat. but this
is not for Imitation.

When young Learners render any Note 5.
Sentence of this Nature by *quod* or *ut*, Rules when
they are apt to fall under some Difficul- to use
ty in the Choice of *quod* or *ut*, as not quod for
being at Liberty to use either; which that, and
may in some Measure be remov'd by ob- when ut.
serving these following Rules: 1. Use
ut or *uti* for *that*, when it comes after
so or *such*, or the Primitive *that*; as, *Tam*
atrox pugna fuit, ut, &c. Flor. Adone
es ignarus, ut hac nescias? Cic. Quo in ge-
nerē tantum profecisse videmur, ut Gracis ne
verborum quidem copia vinceremur, Cic de
Nat. Deor. l. 1. Ea lege atque amine, ut
si te inde eximerim, ego pro te molam, Ter.
Qua talia sunt ut ea ipsa dii immortales ad
usum hominum fabricati pene videantur,
Cic.

Cic. de Nat. L. 1. 2. Use *ut*, when that is the first Word of a Sentence; as, *Ut omnia uno verbo compingam. Tanta vecordia innata cuicumque ut fiet*, Ter. Vid Note 10.

3. Use *ut* or *quo*, when that signifies to the End that, in which Sense it has commonly the Signs *may*, *can*, *might*, &c. accompanying it; as, *Ut pro aliis loquar quod de me ipse sentio*, Cic. *Quo celerius evaderem*, Sen. 4. After a Nominative with *est*; as, *Lex est, ut orbæ iis nubant*, Ter. Phor. 1. 3. 5. Use *ut* or *uti* after all Adjectives of the Neuter Gender with *est*, agreeing with Thing or Duty; as *necesse est, turpe est*, &c. as also after all Impersonals that have the Signification of an Adjective of the Neuter Gender with *est*, as *expedit, convenit*, &c. which are as much as *expeditions est, conveniens est; fieri non potest*, for *impossibile est*. Except such only as signify Knowledge or Certainty; as, *Manifestum est, verum est, certum est, insigne est, liquet*, &c. and the contrary, after which use *quod*.

6. Use *ut* or *uti* after all Verbs of such a Signification, as in the Present Tense supposes the Action or Passion following not yet done or suffer'd; as, *I command, wish, warn, counsel, intreat, desire that you perform your Duty; and therefore I endeavour, and take care, that you learn it. And if I obtain this, that you pursue your true Interest, I shall easily grant, permit, consent*

consent that you live as you list, and not cause that you be confined to the Will of another. 7. Use *quod* after all Verbs that have such a Signification as in the Present Tense supposes the Action following the Conjunction *that* already done, and all such Verbs as necessarily require a Future Tense to follow the Conjunction *that*, such as Verbs of threatening, promising, foretelling; as, *I know, believe, observe, declare, that my Son is in Love. I say, think, hear, perceive, suppose, suspect, that my Friend deceives me. Except it happens, which requires ut; as, Accidit hoc, ut nunquam conferti sed rari praelarentur, Cæs. B. G. l. 5.*

If you would leave out the Particle *that*, turning the Nominative into an Accusative, and the Verb into an Infinitive, you must take this Caution, never to do so, except when the Conjunction *that* may be rendred by *quod*, according to the foregoing Rule; or being to be rendred by *ut*, may come under one of the two last Cases before mentioned, where *ut* is to be used.

After *confido, spero, suspicor*, and *omino*, it is very elegant to paraphrase the Infinitive with *fore* or *futurum esse* and *ut*; as, *Spero fore ut homines veterum legatione aliquando dilectentur. In magnam spem veniebat fore, ut pertinacia desisteres, Cæs. B. G. l. 1. Spero enim fore ut eruditus abs te diuinus existat nobis, A. Gell. 9.3.*

Note 6.

ut never to be lest out but when it may come under one of the two last Cases mention'd.

Note 7.

after confido, &c. paraphrase the Infinitive with fore and ut.

Note 8. That after Verbs of fearing in affirmative Speeches is made by *ne*, in negative by *ut* or *ne non*; as, *Timebam ne evenirent ea quæ acciderunt*, Cic. *Metum ut subisset hospes*, Ter. Andr. 5. 4. *Timui ne non succederet*, Hor. L. 1. Ep. 17.

Note 9. *Ne*, *lest*, after *caveo* is elegantly omitted, and so is *ut* that, after most Verbs that suppose the Action following not yet done; as, *Caveo, volo, nolo, peto, censeo, dic, fac, jubio, impero, scribo, opto, licet, sino, oportet*: As, *Cave posthac, si me amas, unquam istuc verbum ex te audivam*, Ter. Heaut. 5. 4. *Tu cave defendas quamvis mordebere dictis*, Ovid de Trist. El. 1. *Treviros vites censeo*, Cic. *Dic & arguta properet Nera*, Hor. Od. 14. L. 3. *Scriptum ad Neronem daret medico*, &c. Cic. *Vellus optem prius ima dehiscat*, Virg. *Egredere pradem illi daret*, Cic. *Orant in prelium revertantur*, Just. *Inscitia est adverbum stimulum calces*, Ter. Phorm. 1. 2. Examples abound every where.

Note 10. Sometimes the former Verb is omitted, and then the following Verb is either rendered by an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood with *ut*; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam?* Virg. Æn. 1. 1. *Servont fortunas meas commississe futili?* Ter. Andr. *Tanta recordia innata cuicumque in fiet?* Id. Andr. The former Verb understood is *quis* who would think? *Is it possible? Credibile est? par est? &c.*

There

On *Princip. Rule, Part 3. Vid. Anal. Synt. Obs. 6.*

There are several ways of varying to *Part 4.* with its Verb after *Motion*; the most ^{to after a} usual are into a Subjunctive with *ut*, or ^{Verb of} a Gerund in *di* with *causa* or *gratia*, or ^{Motion} a Participle of the Future in *rus*; the ^{rendred} less usual are the Infinitive Mood, the ^{several} Participle of the Present Tense, or a Dative Gerund in *do*, which as often as a casual Word follows is turn'd into a Participle in *du*. Examples of the first three are common. Examples of the latter are, *Ecquis currit pollinctorem arcessere*, Plaut. *As. 5. 2.* *Flavius dicitur ad collegam venisse visere*, A. Gell. *l. 6 c. 4.* *Non nos aut ferro Libicos populare penates venimus*, Virg. *Æn. 1.* *Tum Legatis Tullius dicendi potestatem quid petentes venerint facit*, Liv. *l. 1.* *Hinc nuncius ibis Pelida referens*, Virg. *Æn. 2.* *Cur venisset neque augendis militum stipendiis, neque allevandis laboribus*, Tac. *Ann. l. 1.*

Some have thought that in that *Part 5.* *Passage* of Virgil, *Æn. 1.* *Sic nam fore bello* ^{facilem} *egregiam & facilem victu per secula gen-* ^{victu, in} *icem Victu* is a latter *Suine* from *vinco*, ^{Virg.} but of an Active Signification *easy to conquer*, which no Author has imitated; and therefore may rather be supposed a Substantive from *Vivo*; not that it expresses, as some think, *the future Plenty of Carthage*; but *its future Glory*, That

it should be a Nation that might easily make itself live for Ages; or else that it should be a hardy Nation, that could live upon any thing. As, Sen. Ep. 90. *Sapiens facilis victu fuit*: Was content to fare hardly.

Note 2. 'Tis observable in *Salust*, that he often uses *Optimum factum*, instead of *optimum factu*, Best to be done, Jug. Par. 115. *Quare optimum factum videri per media ejus castra palam transire*. And again, *Optimum factum credens Exercentum augere*, Id. Catil.

Note 3. To be after necessary rendred by *Opus* or *Usus*, is often translated by an Ablative of the Participle of the Præter Tense, instead of the latter Supine; especially among Dramatick Poets and Historians: As, *Quoquo pacto tacito opus est*, Ter. Adel. 3. 2. *Ita facto maturatque opus esse*, Liv. *Et moneo quid facto usus est*, Ter. Adel. 3. 3. *Primum erat nihil cum prope-rato opus esset*, Cic. pro Mil.

Note 4. Sometimes instead of a latter Supine we meet with a Gerund in *dum*, or a Dative Gerund in *do* used passively, and sometimes an Infinitive; as, *Ut ad cognoscendum omnia illustra sint*, Sal. Jug. l. i. *Difficilisque ad oppugnandum erat accessus*, Hirt. *Utile bibendo*, Plin. *Habile tundendo*, Id. *Et erat tum dignus amari*, Virg. Ecl. 5. *Cereus in vitum plecti*, Hor. de Arte Poet. *Si credere dignum est*, Virg. Georg. 1. 3. *If it be worthy to be believed, or to believe it.*

The Truth of it is, *to* coming before *Obs.* 4.
a Verb expressing an Action that is af-
terwards to come to pass, is always ex-
press'd by a Participle of the Future in
rus, whether it come after any Tense of
Sum or no: thus *Virgil*, *Æn.* 8. *Si visu-*
rus eum vivo, & venturus in unum: If ever
I live to see him in Time to come.

And even when *Necessity* is signified: a Participle
Thus *Hor.* L. 2. *Od.* 3. *Aequam mement-* of the Fu-
to rebus in arduis servare mentem moriture ture in *rus*
Dei: O Delius that must die. after must
or like.

Especially when you can put *like* be-
fore it: As in that of *Ovid*, *Met.* 1. 2.
Non auditurum miseras Phaetonta querelas
nocte dieque vocant: Not like to hear.

The Particle *like* sometimes comes be- *Note 2.*
fore a Verb with *to*, and signifies *almost* to after
or *well nigh*; namely, when it follows had like.
the Particle *had*, and then is rendred
by *prope erat ut*, or *parum* or *non mul-*
tum absuit quin, with a Subjunctive Mood,
or *pane* or *tantum non* with an Indica-
tive; as, *Prope erat ut sinistrum cornu*
pelleretur, *Liv.* *Non multum absuit quin*
quo intenderet, penetraret, *Id.* *Pane vi-*
dimus regna Proserpina, *Hor.* L. 2. *Od.* 13.
Mucius scævola tantum non eodem igne se-
pelitur, *Flor.* l. 3. c. 21.

Other Tenses also of the Verb *Sum* Part 2.
besides *est* are joyned with Gerunds in a Gerund
the Sense of *Necessity* or *Duty*; as *Quan-* in dum
do aliis locis de virtute diximus, & saepe di- used be-
cendum fore other

Tenses of
Sum be-
sides est.

endum erit, Cic. in 4 Tule. And pro Mil. *Sic miloni cum insidiator esset, subsistendum atque expectandum fuit.* Sit and fore are frequently thus used.

Note 2.
A Gerund
in dum
before est,
or any o-
ther Tense
of Sum, to
be varied
into other
Forms of
Speech.

This Gerund in *dum* with *est* signifying Necessity or Duty, is to be varied into several other Forms of Speech, and rendered accordingly. Thus *I am to go* (i. e. *I must go*) *Eundum est mihi.* *Necesse* or *opus est ut eam.* It behoveth me to go, *Oportet me ire.* So *You are to* (or *must*) *live* as becomes a Christian, *Vivendum est tibi ut Christianum decet.* It behoveth you to live, *Oportet te vivere.* You ought to live, *Debes vivere.* It is your Part or Duty to live, *Tuam est vivere.* 'Tis fit that you live. *Aequum est te vivere, &c.*

Those latter
Forms
of Speech
are more
proper,
when the
Verb go-
verns a
Dative.

And if the Verb from whence the Gerund comes govern a Dative, it is best to vary it into some of these Phrases, to avoid Ambiguity. Thus *I must tell you*, being translated, *Mihi dicendum est tibi*, would as well signify, *You must tell me*; therefore where Tully says, *Illi mihi necesse est concedant*, the sense would have been ambiguous if he had said, *Mihi concedendum est illis*; yet sometimes it is done, as, *Lingua moderandum est mihi*, Plaut. Curc. 4. 1.

Note 3.
If an Ac-
cusat. fol-
low a Ge-
rund in
dum with

If there be an Accusative Case after the Gerund in *dum* with *est*, it is then by no means Elegant to render it so; but by some of the Phrases last men-
tion'd,

tion'd, or else turn the Gerund into a Participle in *dus*. Thus if I were to translate, *You are to (or must) honor your Parents, Honorandum est tibi Parentes,* is not allowable; rather say, *Honorandi sunt tibi Parentes*. The Ancients indeed do sometimes write so; thus *Lucretius*, L. 1. *Aut igitur motu privandum est corpora quaque*. And once *Virgil*, *Æn. 11. Legati responsa ferunt — alia arma Latinis querenda, aut pacem Trojano ab Rege petendum*; in Imitation of the *Greeks*, among whom such Phrases are familiar: But such Expressions in Prose are never used; especially where the Accusative following is Masculine or Neuter Singular.

This Observation is true, unless there be a Verbal Adjective to express it by; as, *Venalis* to be sold; *penetrabilis*, to be pierced, and the like.

To in this Case is sometimes used in English instead of *to be*; as, *You are both to blame*. i. e. *to be blamed*, *Ambig accusandi*, *Ter. Hec. 1. 1.*

This *to be* signifying an Action hereafter to be done, is always rendered by a Participle in *dus*, and is found after other Verbs beside *Sum*, especially after *resto*, *relinquo*, *supersum*; as, *There yet remain many Things to speak of*, i. e. *to be spoken of*: *Multa adhuc restant dicenda*. *He left many Things to do*, i. e. *to be done*, *Multa reliquit agenda*. Thus *Luc. Nam*

est, rather
when it into
a Participle
in *dus*.

Obs. 5.
sometimes
to be be-
fore a Verb
rendered by
an Adject.
Note 2.
to be used in
this Case
instead of
to be.

Note 3.
to be after
resto, re-
linquo,
supersum
Ec. ren-
dered by a
Participle
in *dus*.

Caesar

Caesar in omnia praeceptis, nil altum credens si quid superesset agendum. And Hor. L. 1. Ep. 17. *Hac porcis hodie comedenda reliquo.* Epigrammata incidenda suo sepulchro reliquerunt, A. Gell. L. 24.

Note 4.
to after
have ren-
dred by a
Participle
in *du*, or
a Potential
Mood with
qui, or an
Infinit.

The same Things we often find after the Verb *have*; as, *I have many Things to say.* *I have a long Journey to go,* and the like. Such Phrases as these are rendered either by a Participle in *du*, or a Potential Mood with *qui*; or lastly, by an Infinitive Mood Active; as, *Multa habeo dicenda*; or rather, *Sunt mihi dicenda, multa habeo quae dicam* or *dicerem*, and *multa habeo dicere*. Examples are obvious.

Obs. 6.
to after a
Noun ren-
dred by a
Gerund in
di, even
when to
cannot be
turn'd into
of, and the
Verb into
a Verbal
in *ing*.

However we find some Nouns having a Verb with *to* after them translated by a Gerund in *di*, which nevertheless in English will scarce bear the varying of the Particle *to* into *of*, and the Verb into a Verbal in *ing*. Such as *Leave, Counsel, Leisure, &c.* As, *Postquam introgressi, & coram data copia fandi,* Virg. Aen. 1. *Leave to speak.* *Qui mihi consilium vivendi mihi dedisti,* Ovid. de Trist. Eleg. 4. *Non hercle otium est nunc mihi auscultandi,* Ter. Ad. 3. 3. *Quanta civitas opulentior, & comprimendi procul praesidium,* Tac. L. 3. *Quoniam nullum mihi scribendi argumentum relictum est,* Cic. *Qua concessione contenti Thebani signum parcendi dedere,* Just. l. 6. c. 7. *Plato veritatis omnibus*

exhibendæ promptissimus, Very ready to discover the Truth, A. Gell. l. 10. 22.

If the Adjective foregoing govern a Dative, the Gerund in *dum* with *ad* is turn'd into a Dative Gerund, or Participle in *dus* of the Dative Case; as, *Qui in principio seditioni coercenda impar sunt*, A. Gell. l. 2. c. 12.

Sometimes even when *to* can be turn'd into *of*, and its Verb into a Verbal in *ing*, it is nevertheless rendred by a Gerund in *dum* with *ad*; as, *Quo justissima mihi causa ad hunc defendendum esse visa est*, Cic. pro Rab. *Petito tempore ad delibandum*, Flor. 8. 10. And sometimes by an Infinitive Mood; especially among the Poets: As, *Jam tempus est ad id quod instituiamus accedere*, Cic. in Top. *Nunc est occasio benefacta cumulare*, Plaut. *ad. 2. 3. Sed si tantus amor casus cognoscere nostros*, Virg. Æn. 2. And so sometimes Adjectives that require a Gerund in *di*, have after them a Gerund in *dum* with *ad*; *Et rudes adhuc ad resistendum populos perdomuit*, Just. L. 1. Sat. 1. *ad respondendum & cavendum peritus sit*, Cic. de Orat. *Avidi promittere bellum*, Stat. 3. Theb. And as well those that require a Gerund in *di*, as those that require a Gerund in *dum* with *ad*, take an Infinitive among the Poets; *Auditasque amor penitus demittere voces*, Id. 2. Sylv. *aperisque hanc flectere molem nescius*, Id. 3. Theb.

3. Theb. *Boni culamos inflare*, Virg. Ec. 5. *At rubus & sentes tantummodo ledere nati*, Ovid. de Nuc. *Id quod parati sunt facere*, Cic. pro Quint. *Tu face nescio quos esto contentus amores irritare tu*, Ovid. Met. L. 1. *Assueti longo muros defendere bello*, Virg. Æn. 9. *Audax omnia perpeti gens humana ruit in vetitum nefas*, Hor. L. 1. Od. 3. in Imitation of the Greeks.

Note 4. Sometimes *to* with its Verb after necessary rendred by *opus*, is turn'd into a Participle of the Preter Tense instead of a Gerund in *dum* with *ad* in Dramatic Poets; as, *Remissane opus sit nobis, an reducta domum*, Ter. Hec. 4. 4. Whether it be necessary for us to send her back, or bring her Home. *Opus est convento homine*, Plaut. Cure. 2. 3. *Ut parentur, quibus paratis opus est*, Plaut. Men. 5. 5. *Nunc audacia usus est nobis inventa & dolis*, Plaut. As. 2. 2.

On Id. 1. Sometimes *ad* before this Gerund is turn'd into *ob*, *propter* and *pro*; as, *Ob quarendum victum operam pistori locasset*, A. Gell. l. 3. c. 3. *Anne quasi parvam præterierit pena sumendæ causam propter tuendam læsi hominis auctoritatem*, A. Gell. l. 6. c. 14. *Idque illis Tiberium pro referenda gratia tribuisse*, A. Gell. 16. 14.

Note 2. This Gerund in *dum* with *ad* signifying the End or Design, is often varied into a Subjunctive Mood with *ut* or *qui*, or

or a Gerund in *di* with *causa* or *gratia*, signifying
 or a Participle of the Future in *rus*, or the End,
 a Dative Gerund turn'd into a Gerund often turn-
 dive; as, *Eu proposito in Asiam veni, non acber*
ut acciperem quod dedissent sed ut &c. Sen. Forms of
 Ep. 5. 3. *Aut hanc pro numine las effigiem speaking.*
statuere, nefas quæ triste piaret, Viig. Æn. 2.
Et cum equitatus noster liberius vastandi
predandique causa se in agros effunderent,
 Cæs. de Bell. Gall. L. 5

In this Case *causa* or *gratia* is often omitted,
 and the Gerund made to comply with the ca-
 sual Word following: As, *Id fecit abolenda ma-*
gi infamie ob amissum cum Quintilio varo exercitum,
 Tac. *Cenam dabit celebranda lucis annua, quam*
principem sibi vita habuerat, Id. A. Gell. 19. 9.
Aut hæc in nostros extructa est machina milios inspe-
ctura domos Viig. Æn. 2. Itaque Pomevinæ man-
bia, quæ producendo ad culmen operi destinata erant,
vix in fundamento suppedire, Liv. L. 1. Rapis
exercitum trans montem, recuperandis (ut ferebat)
Tigranocertis, vastandisque regionibus, Tac. Ut quam
primum comitia regi creando fierent, Liv. 1. Quod
Tribuni creati videntur non juri dicundo, sed inter-
cessionibus faciendis, A. Gell. 13. 12. Non ego
mutandis mercibus equos atq, Ovid. de Trist. El. 2.
Quindecim die spacianda Asia immorari, Just. L. 2. c. 3.
Et quot aut pecori malini submittere habendo, Viig.
 Georg. 1. 3. v. 159.

But in some particular Phrases, we Note 3.
 find *to* signifying the End or Design, ren- to signify-
 dred by a first Supine; as, *Daturne illa ing, the*
Pamphilo bodie nuptum, Ter. Andr. 2. 1. End or
Ediam nuptum locavit, Id. Phorm. Pha- redred by
driam comessum inermittamus, Ter. a first sup-
 Eun. 3. 1. *Pamphilam caritatem provocare.*

mus, Id. *ibid.* *Spectatum admissi risum te-
neatis amici?* Hor. de Arte Poet. *Coctum
ego, non vapulatum dudum conductus sum.*
Plant. Aul. 3. 3. *Qui esum neque vocan-
tur neque vocant*, Id. Men. 3. 1. *Servi-
tum tibi me abducito*, Id. Pseud. 1. 5.

Part 2. *To be* signifying the *End*, is sometimes,
to be sig- tho' rarely, rendred by a Passive Gerund
nifying in *di* with *causa* or *gratia*; as, Just. l. 15.
the End, c. 3. *Athenas quoque erudiendi gratia mis-*
rendred by *sus*: Or a Gerund in *dum* with *ad*; as,
a Gerund *Si quis ad verberandum ducatur*, A. Gell.
in *di* with *causa*. 10. 15.

Note 2. After particular Verbs it is rendred
and some- by a Participle of the Future in *dus*,
times by a namely, after some Verbs of Motion,
Participle and after Verbs signifying to give, com-
of the Fu- mit, or deliver up; as, *Nuribus misit ge-
ture in standa Latinis*, Ovid. Met. L. 2. Fab. 2.
dus. *Sed puerum est ausus Romam portare do-
cendum*, Hor. L. 1. Sat. 6. *Ille Cassium
occidendum delegaverat*, Suet. Cal. 57.
Cesserant nitidis habitanda piscibus unda,
Ovid. Met. L. 1. *Hunc nunc, Lyce, ad
te deripiendum adducimus*, Plant. Pæn. 3. 3.
Avibus epulandos licet trahat, Sen. Thy.
Act. 4. *Natus infans datur Harpago occi-
dendus*, Just. l. 1. c. 4. *Hunc comedendum
& deripiendum vobis præbeo*, Ter. Eun. 5. 9.
Agrum fodiendum locavit, Plaut. Amph.
4. 2. *Agrum utendum accepit*, Cic. Tusc.
Cadundum illum ego condux, Plaut. Aul.
3. 6. *Loca quæ a ducibus tuenda acceperant,
morientes*

morientes corporibus texerunt, Just. l. 9. c. 3.
Oculos habeo neque rogo utendos foris, Plaut.
 Mil. 2. 4. Poetice an Infinitive; as, *Tris-
 titiam & metus tradam protervis in mare
 Creticum portare ventis*, Hor. L. 1. Od. 26.
 for portandos.

In this Sense the Passive Sign *be* is ^{the Passive} sometimes omitted in *English*; especially ^{Sign be} after the Verb *give*; as if I should say, ^{omitted in} *They gave her the Child to nurse*: *Infantem* ^{the English} *ei nutriendum tradiderunt*. And there- ^{after the} ^{Verb give.} fore this Participle in *dus* is sometimes varied into an Infinitive Mood Active. Thus in *Ter. Eun. 5. 2.* it is *Neque pol servandum tibi quicquam dare ausim*: But in *Virg. Æn. 5.* it is *Magnum dat ferre talenium*; and *Donat habere viro decus & tutamen in armis*, L. 5.

but when the Substantive that in this ^{On Id. 3.} Case stands before *to*, signifies ^{the Matter} *to* after a or ^{Substant.} *Instrument*, it may then be also ren- dred by a Gerund in *dum* with *ad*, or ^{signifying} a Dative Gerundive; as, *I have Parsely* ^{the Matter} *in my Garden to knit Crowns with*; besides <sup>or Instru-
ment,</sup> *Apium habeo in horto, quo nectam coronas*; sometimes I may also say, *Ad nectendum* or *--das co-* ^{rendred by} *ronas*; or as *Horace* does, L. 4. Od. 11. ^{a Gerund} *Est* or *habeo in horto nectendis apium coro-* ^{in dum} *nis*. So *He prepared a Sword to kill the* ^{with ad,} *Consuls*: *Paravit gladium quo Consules oc-* ^{or a Dat.} *cideret*: But it may be also *Ad occiden-* ^{Gerundive} *dos Consules*, or *occidendis Consulibus*.

On Id. 5. This Infinitive Mood after Adjectives *the Infinit.* signifying *Worthiness*, is elegantly rendered by leaving out the Adjective *after wor-* worthy or *fit*, and turning the Verb with *to* *thy or fit*, and turning the Verb with *to* into a Participial in *dus*, or a Verbal in *bilis*; as, *O mihi post nullos unquam memorande sodales. Ea epistola exscribenda visa est*, A. Gell. l. 9. c. 3. *Seem'd fit to be written, or worthy. Vixque tenet lachrymas quia nil lachrymabile cernit*, Ovid. Met. l. 2.

On Id. 6. If in this Case there comes a Substantive with *for* between the Adject. with *too* and the following Verb, and some Pronoun follow the Verb, the Pronoun, be it what it will, is elegantly rendered by such Case of *qui* as the Verb will govern: Thus, *I am too great for Fortune to hurt me*, is not only to be rendered, *Major sum quam ut mihi fortuna noceat*; but also, *Major sum, quam cui possit fortuna nocere*.

On Id. 8. If the casual Word that follows the Gerund in *di* be a Pronoun, and meant of a Woman, we find sometimes the casual Word turn'd into the Genitive Case without altering the Gerund in *di*; as, *Ter. Hec. 3. 3. Ego ejus videndi cupidus recta sequor*: Where by *ejus* is meant *Pamphilus's Wife*.

Note 2. The same is sometimes done, if the casual Word be plural; as, *Ter. Heaut. Prol. Novarum qui spectandi faciunt copiam. Quum illorum videndi gratia me in forum contulissem*, Id.

But if the casual Word be the Recl- Note 3.
 proval *sui*, this way of rendring is pre-
 ferable to all others: Thus Cæs. B. G.
 l. 5. *Magnaque eorum numero interfecta,*
neque sui colligendi facultatem dederunt,
 for *sui colligendorum*. And Cic. de Nat.
 Deor. *Doleo tantum Stoicos nostros epicu-*
reis irridendi sui facultatem dedisse.

NOTES on Chap. XV.

Of the Verbal in ing.

Sometimes for the Participle of the Rule,
 Present Tense is used a Verbal Ad- Part 1.
 jective in *bundus*; as *populabundus*, *errabundus*,
humans, *latabundus*, *ludibundus*. Vid. A. bundus
 Gell. l. 11. c. 15. used for a
 Participle.

In this Case the Verbal in ing is ex- Part 2.
 press'd sometimes by an Infinitive Mood a Verbal in
 put for a Substantive; as, *Lying is not* ing ren-
my Property: Mentiri non est meum, Plaut. dred by an
Velle suum cuique est, Pers. Infinitive,

If a come before a Verbal in ing after Note 2.
 Motion, it is made by a first Supine, and a before a
 signifying the End or Design of the fore- Verbal in
 going Action is made by a Gerund in ing after
dum with *ad*; as, *I go a Fishing* They ride signifying
a hunting. Set the Liquor a Sunning. Hang the End.
 the Net a drying. As Princip. Rule, Part 4.
 and Id. l. Chap. 14.

Sometimes indeed a Verbal in ing has Note 3.
 before it an Adjective, such as *no*, *good*,
bad.

a Verbal in *bad*, *ill*, and then is rather rendred by *ing* after an Impersonal Passive, than a Substantive; and that is, when *there is*, or *there can be*, goes before it: *There is no good Impersonal trusting to the Bank: Non bene ripa creditur*, Virg. Ecl. 3. *Non potest obsisti huic*, Plaut. Pseud. 1. 3. *There can be no resisting him. There can be no good living without living honestly: Non potest jucunde vivi, nisi honeste vivatur*, Cic. fin. 1. 18.

Note 4. In negative Speeches this Impersonal Passive may be varied into a Gerund in *dum* with *est*; as, *There is no withstanding him: Ei obsistendum non est. Ad summum non est, nisi ex principis, perveniendum*. Thus Pliny, *Alius de alio judicat dies, & tamen supremus de omnibus: ideoque nullis credendum*. Therefore there is no trusting to any.

Part 3. Vide on Id. 8. of the foregoing Chapter.

Part 4. From before a Verbal in *ing* is sometimes rendred by a latter Supine after Motion; *Obsonatu redeo*, Plaut. Men. *Primus cubitu surgat*, Var. R. R. c. 5. *Venatu rediturum*, Stat. 1. Ach.

Note 2. From with its Verbal in *ing* sometimes follows the Particle *far* made by *longe abest*, or *so far* made by *tantum abest*, and then is rendred by a Subjunctive Mood with *ut*; as, *Na ille longe abest, ut argumentis credat Philosophorum*, Cic.

After not far by quin; as, *Naves in-* Note 3.
venit non multum abesse ab eo quin paucis
diebus deduci possent, Cæs. B. G. l. 5.

Sometimes after so far It is rendred Note 4:
by adeo non without ut; as, *He was so far*
from violating, *Conjugem ejusdem adeo non*
violavit, Curt. L. 3

From with its Verbal in ing sometimes Note 5.
comes after Verbs of hindring, withhold-
ing, deterring, and then is commonly
rendred by a Subjunctive with ne, quo
minus and quin; as, *Per eos ne causam di-*
ceret se eripuit, Cæs. B. G. l. 11. *Nihil*
impedit quo minus id facere possimus, Cic.
fin. 1. 10. *Nec mihi tamen ne faciam*
interdictum puto, Id. fin. 1. 3. *Ter' me*
prohibeas meam ne tangam, Ter. Eun. 4. 7:
Vix me contineo, quin in-volcm in capillum,
Id. Eun. 5. 2. *Quem tu asservare recte, ne*
ausugiat, voles: Keep from running away,
Plaut. Mæn. 1. 1.

Sometimes by an Infinitive or a Ge- Note 6:
rundive; as, *Pabula venti ferre domum*
prohibent, Virg. Georg. 4. *Quod meritis*
eorum referre gratiam prohiberent, Tac.
Ann. L. 15. *Quod visendo eo prohibere-*
tur, Id. L. 15. de morte Sen.

In before a Verbal in ing signifying In-
Instantness of Action, is best rendred by
a Gerund in dum with inter; as, *Inter*
agendum occurfare capro, cornu ferit ille
caveto, Virg. Ecl. 9.

For.

For before a Verbal in *ing* is rarely rendered by *pro* with a Gerund in *do*; as, *Plant. Aul. 3. 3. Hæus senex pro vapulando hercle abs te mercedem petam*; oftner by *ob* with a Gerund in *dum*, and that in *Cic. Verr. L. 4. Quanto illud flagitiosius eum à quo pecuniam ob absolvendum accepis condemnare?* And again, *L. 2. Hoc plane factum est, eos pecuniam ob rejudicandam accepisse. Excepit dumtaxat P. Clodio, qui ob expellendum urbe Ciceronem plebeio homini in adoptionem se dedit. Suet. Tib. 2. Nunc isti precia maxima ob tacendum accipiunt, A. Gell. l. 11. c. 10.*

Note 2.

best rendered by
quod or
qui.

But both ways of rendering are so very rare, that it is reckon'd much more elegant to render it by *quod* or *qui* with a Subjunctive Mood rather; as, *Mihi quod defendissem leviter succensuit, Cic. Mihi deos satis scio fuisse iratos qui auscultaverim, Ter. Andr. 4. 1. Scelus expendisse merentem Laocoonta ferunt, sacrum qui cuspide robar laferit, Virg. Sometimes an Indicative; Titius quod habuit imaginem L. Saturnini domi sua condemnatus est, Cic. pro Rab. Di tibi grates persolvant dignas, qui nati me vernere lethum fecisti, Virg. Æn. 2. for making me. Boi humus filium suum quod contra suum dictum in hostem pugnaverat, securi necavit, A. Gell. 17. 21.*

Note 3.

It is rendered by an Ablative absolute in *Tac. Ann. L. 4. Decreta triumphi insignis*

Senia Poppae Sabino confusus Thoracum re- sometimes
rendred by
for conquering the Kings of Thracia.

By an Infinitive in *Terence* Phorm. 1. 2. *an Ablative*
Amo te, & non neglexisse, habeo gratiam, absolute.

for not neglecting. Note 4.

After Adjectives signifying Fitness or Note 5.
Usefulness, for before a Verbal in ing is a

Sign of a Dative Gerund in *do*, which a Verbal in

Dative Gerund, if it have a casual Word ing, after

following, is turn'd into a Gerundive of fit or use-

the Dative Case; as, *Mox apta natando* ful, ren-
ered by a

erit a dat. Ovid. Met. 15. *Quicquid u-* Dative
lendo igni aptum era, Curt. L. 4. *Nam* Gerund.

pulmoni fovendo, rigandoque utiles, necessa-

riosque humores videri, A. Gell. 17. 12. Note 6.

In which Case the Adjective *fit* is ele-

gantly omitted in the Latin; as, *Alex-*

andrina fici vix sunt viscendo, Plin. L. 48.

c. 18. *Ut divites conferrent qui oneri fo-*

rendo essent, L. N. 1. 2. *Ignibus gerendis*

nutriendisque soli ipsius naturalis materia,

Iust. l. 4. c. 1. i. c. Apra ignibus gene-

randis, &c. Qui cultus habendo fit pectori,

Virg. Georg. L. 1.

The same Verbal in *ing* with *for* is

likewise often thus rendred after Verbs Note 7.

that govern a Dative; as, *Tempus legen-*

dis libri datum, Quint. Inst. Time allowed
for reading Books. Gnatius naves adesse
efficiundo ponti, Tac. Audenda tam multa
studium consilium, Id. Quod opus qui com-
modis tractaverit, cuiusque discendo suffi-
ciat, Quint. Inst. l. 1. c. 9.
Ad

No. 8.

For before
a Verbal in
ing after
cannot
rendred
by præ.

Part 9.

For before a Verbal in ing after cannot
be scarce can, is commonly rendred by
a Verbal substantive with præ; as, *They*
could scarce salute one another for weeping:
Vix præ fletu usurpata consalutatio, Tac.
Ann. scarcely

Of is never put for with but after de-
fessus; as, *Defessus sum ambulando:* But
even then is sometimes rendred by an
Infinitive; as, *Per omnem urbem quem*
sum defessus querere, Plaut. Epid. 2. 2.

About.

If about come before a Verbal in ing,
and cannot be turn'd into of or concern-
ing, it is rendred by circa, with a Ge-
rund in dum; as, *Plus eloquentia circa*
movendum valet, Quint.

Before.

It is also remarkable, that *Virgil,*
Georg. L. 3 has rendred a Verbal in ing
by a Gerund in dum after ante; as, *Nam-*
que ante domandum ingentes tollent animos,
before taming, for *antequam domantur.*

Without.

We often meet with the Preposition
without in English, before a Verbal in ing,
which seems as if it were to be rendred
by a Gerund in do with sine or absque;
but is indeed a pure English Idiom un-
known to the Latins, who as often as

If the for-
mer Part
of the Sen-
tence be
negative,
rendred by
does not miss.

the former Part of the Sentence is ne-
gative, vary it into but or unless, and
render it accordingly by quin, qui non,
or nisi, with a Subjunctive Mood; as, *He*
does not miss one Day without coming:
quin, &c. Nunquam unum intermisit diem quin ve-
nias,

Of the Verbal in ing.

187

niat, Ter. Andr. 3. 1. I have let no body pass without giving him a Letter: *Equidem neminem praetermisi, cui literas non dederim.* Cic. He cannot rise without helping: *Non potest nisi adiutus exurgere.* Sen.

Sometimes the former Part of the Sentence is affirmative, and then without is rendered by *non* or *neque*, with a Participle or Verb of the Indicative Mood; as, *Ton come without sending for: Venis non accersum.* Non ita multum moratus, Cæs. G. 1. 5 Without staying long. *Haud plura locuta fugit,* Ovid. Met. 1. 2. Without speaking any more. *Infert se per medios neque cernitur ulli: Without being seen,* Virg. Æn. 1. *Radit iter liquidum celeres neque commovet alas,* Id. l. 5. Without moving her Wings.

Note 2.
If affirmative, by *non* or *neque* with a Participle or an Indicative.

Sometimes it is rendered by *nullus* with a Participle in the Ablative absolute; as, *Venis nullo accersente.* So *Nullo inhibente,* Ovid. *Nullo adversante,* Tac. or else by some negative Compound; as, *Indicta causa condemnari,* Cic pro Rab. *Infesta pace venis,* Ter. Eun. 1. 1. *Ripante injussu ab his,* Æn. L. 6.

Note 3.
Sometimes by *nullus*, with a Participle in the Ablative absolute.

But if the Verbal in *ing* after *Sum* is deriv'd from a Verb Active, which in the Sentence you are translating, happens to have no Accusative Case, then it is rendered by a Verb Passive; as, *We were playing, whilst Supper was making ready: Nos lusimus, dum cana parabatur.* So

On Id. 1.
A Verbal in *ing* after *Sum* rendered by a Passive.

Ter. *Ea res nunc agitur ipse*: That very thing is now a doing.

Note 2. However Authors do sometimes use the Participle of the Present Tense after *Sum*, in imitation of the Greeks, who often do so. Thus *Plaut. Curc. 2. 2. Quos semper videas bibentes esse in Thermapolis*. And *A. Gell. 11. 4. Hecuba est ad Ulyssam dicens*. And *Cic. de Orat. Est ut scis quasi in extrema pagina, his ipsis verbis loquens Socrates*. And *Quid has, Omnia sunt hominum tenui pendencia filo*. And *Ter. Andr. Renuncio hanc futurum ut scis sciens*; and *Est abhorrens ab hac re* is usual: But these, or at least some of them, seem rather Adjectives than Participles.

On Id. 2. Sometimes after *desisto* by a Gerund in *do*, as *Stat. 4. Thob. v. 583. Desiste canendo*.

Note 2. A Verbal in *ing* after Verbs of refusing, is sometimes made by a Subjunctive Mood with *quin*, or *quo minus*; as, *Necque tamen recusare possent quin arma contendunt*, *Cæf.* Neither could they refuse fighting. *Iurejurando civitatem abstringere; sese non recusaturos quo minus sub illorum ditione atque imperio essent*, *Cæf. B. G. 1.* And after *desisto* too; as, *Necquæ si vivit, eam vivam unquam quin inveniam desistam*, *Plaut. Rud. 1. 4.*

On Ellip. when by can be turn'd into
 Indeed when by cannot be turn'd into *from*, or *with* into *together with*, we find the Preposition express; but this Case seldom

seldom happens: So Ter. Adelph. 1. 9. *Quod te isti facilem & festivum putant, id non fieri ex vera vita, neque ex agno & bono, sed ex assentando, indulgendo, largiendo.* Prepos. & Recte scribenda, ratio cum loquendo conjuncta expressit. Quint.

Omitted in the *Idiomatiæ Syntax*, at the End of Chap. 16. Sometimes this Gerund in *do* is turn'd into a Participle in *du*, when a casual Word follows it; as, *Legendis veteribus profici*, for *Ex legendo veteres*.

NOTES on Chap. XVI.

Of *Adverbs, Conjunctions, and the Subjunctive Mood.*

Quoad, until, has sometimes an In-
dicative, as, Cæf. B. G. l. 3. p. 52.
Verf. fol. Ald. *Neque finem infequendi
fecerunt, quoad haffes præcipites eperunt.*

As for the other Conjunctions signi-
fying *although*, namely, *quamvis*, *quan-*
quam, *etsi*, *saltem*, *namque*, tho' indeed
they are commonly found with a Sub-
junctive, yet are sometimes found with
an Indicative, and so is *si*, *ne*, *quod*, and
cum, *when*; which when it signifies *see-*
ing that, has almost always a Subjunctive.
So also has *ut*, *potest* and *quippe* before *quod*,
and *ut*, *quod*, *qualem*, *quadrato*, and *quam*,
how,

they have how, when they do not ask a Question. almost always a Subjunctive, cum, sec-
ing, ut, pote, quippe before qui, and uter, quis, qualis, quantus, and quam, how, when they are Indefinite.

Examples are every where obvious. *Quis* indeed after *dico* and *quaro* is often found with an Indicative; as, *Quin tu uno verbo dic, quid est quod me velis*, Ter. *Sed quaro quid illi opus erit*, Cic. because in both these Cases it is much the same as if a Question were ask'd. Likewise *quis* after *nescio* has most commonly an Indicative; as, *Nescio quis teneros oculos mihi fascinat agros*, Virg. but then it is because *aliquis* is understood as the real Nominative Case, the foremention'd Sentence being as much as *Aliquis oculus, nescio quis fascinat mihi agros*.

and qui pro for quis.

and qui the Relative.

To these we may also add *qui* put for *quic*; as, *Nunc Parmeno te ostendes, qui vir sis*, Ter. Eun. 2. 3.

And also *qui* the Relative, which, when it comes into the latter Clause of a Sentence, so as the Sentence is not entire without it, has for the most part a Subjunctive; as, *Nos delubra deum miseris quibus ultimus esset ille doles, festa volumus fronde per urbem*, Virg. Æn. 2. but then it rather requires an Indicative, when the Sentence is entire without it; as, *Non procul hinc Rhæsi niveis tentoria velis agnoscit lachrymans, primo qua proditis somno Tydides multa vastavit caede cruentum*.

On Id. 1. After *quin* we often find the Indicative Mood, second Person, used instead of the Imperative; *Quin tu quicquid*

takes an indicative

opu

Of the Conjunction Copulative.

2291

*opu'st, and after impera, Plaut. Pseud. 2. 4. instead of
for impera. Quin continetis vocem, indicem
Balsicæ vestre, testem pancitatis, Cic. pro
Rab. Quin is ocyus, Plaut. Merc. 4. 1.
but most commonly has an Interrogation
Point; as, Quin tu istas omittis nugas, ac
intro huc mecum ambulas? Id. Merc. 3. 2.
Ergo quin legis? Id. Pseud. 1. 1.*

Omitted Chap. 17 of *Idiom. Syntax.*

The Conjunctions *autem, enim, quidem* Id. 2. and *quoque* must not be the first Words of a Sentence; *igitur* and *tamen* but rarely; *non* and *ne, lest,* must always stand before their Verb.

Postquam, priusquam and *antequam* Id. 3. have often their last Syllable *quam* parted from them by the Interposition of one or more Words; as, *Nihil sane habebam novi, quod post accidisset quam dedissem Philogeni tuo liberto literas, Cic.*

Sometimes *post, prius,* and *ante* are Id. 4. left out, and only *quam* express'd; as, *Octavo mense quam captum est oppugnari Saguntum captum est, Liv.*

NOTES on Chap. XVII.

Of the Conjunction Copulative.

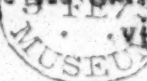
Sometimes tho' the Signs be the same, *Obs. 1.* yet the two Verbs with *and* between when they are found of different Moods; as, *Tu Signs are*
tuum ibi juss,

Verbs con- *rum affatum facies, & hinc aliquid pr*
 Ded are of *manu dederm.* Ter. Adel. 5. 9. Some
 different *tunes different Tenses; as, Nisi latta*
 Moods. *amantem, & vana spe producere,*

Andr. 4. 1.

On Id. 1. But if inter follow *convenit*, the Copu-
 if inter lative and must be read as usual
 followcon- Thus The King and the People are agreed
 venit, the may be rendered not only, *Convenit Reo*
 Copulative *cum populo*, but also, *Convenit inter Re-*
 reutrah bo *gem & populum.*
 usual.

et turn'd *Compono* is found in *Plautus* with the
 into cur same Government; as, *Pacem compono*
 also after *volo meo patri cum matre*, Merc. 5. 2. 1. c.
 compono, *inter patrem & matrem.*



W O R L D N O T E S

Of the Conjunction Copulative.

Sometimes tho' the signs be the same, yet the two Verbs with and between are found of different Moods; as, *Interdixit* & *Interdixit*

THE APPENDIX.

BEING

The Elegant Use of the PREPOSITIONS.

Above, Supra.

Signifying Order or }
Height of Place, } *Super.* 1

More than { *Præter.* 2
 { *Ultra.* 3

More than before }
Number, } *Super.* 4

After an Adjective }
or Verb, } *Ante* 5

† *Super se eos collocavit, Suet. Pugnatum est, super sub-
terque terras, Liv. 2 Brat forma præter cæteras honesta, Ter.
3 Ultra vires, Juv. 4 Super octingentos annos, Tac. 5 Ante
alios pulcherrimus omnes, Virg. Ante alios fortunatus, Id.
Nobis placeant ante omnia Sylva, Id.*

About.

*Circa temporis & loci. Circiter temporis & numeri,
rara loci. Circum loci semper.*

Put for of or } *De.* 1
concerning, } *Super cum Ablat.* 2

Before Time, { *Ad.* 3
 { *Per.* 4
 { *Sub.* 5

Before Number, { *Ad.* 6
 { *Plus minus.* 7
 { *Quasi.* 8
 { *Instar.* 9

Within the Compass of, } *Apud.* 10
or in any Part of, }

- 1 *Adi te beri de filia*, Ter. 2 *Hac super re scribam ad te*, Cic. 3 *Cum jam ad solis occasum esset*, Hier. *Ad qua tempora te expectem*, Cic. 4 *Per idem tempus*, Tac. 5 *Sub ipsum diei ortum*, Curt. *Sub idem tempus*, Suet. *Sub exitu vitæ*, Id. 6 *Ad decem millia*, Curt. 7 *Dies plus minus eriginta*, Plin. 8 *Erant quasi quatuor millia*, Cæs. 9 *Instar septuaginta*, Cic. 10 *Si apud forum est conveniam*, Ter.

After or according to, *Secundum.*

Also { *Ad.* 1
 De, e, ex. 2
 Juxta. 3
 Pro. 4

Before Manner { *Ad.* 5
 De. 6
 In. 7
or Way,

Accordingly, *Secundum ea* 8

- 1 *Ad vulgi opinionem*, Cic. 2 *De sua unius sententia gerit omnia*, Quint. *Ere nata. E natura*, Cic. *Ex veritate causa pendetur*, Cic. *Ex voto, ex animi sententia.* 3 *Quem juxta noturnum visum ergastulo liberaverat*, Just. 4 *Pro mea dignitate*, Cic. 5 *Ad eundem modum*, Cat. 6 *De more*, Virg. 7 *In morem horti*, Col. 8 *Secundum ea multa res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem suscipiendam putaret*, Cæs. B. G. l. i.

After, *Post.*

After Ordinal Num- } *A.* 1
bers commonly, }

Before Time or } *Ad, ex.* 2
Occasion, }

Next after in De- } *Juxta.* 3
gree or Order, } *Secundum.* 4
 Sub. 5

If it follow *proximus*, *a.* 6

- 1 *Secundus a Page habetur*, Hirt. 2 *Utrum nunc veniam an ad decem annos*, Cic. *Nec vero usquam discedebam ex eo die,*

die, Cic. Diem ex die ducere, Cæs. Aliud ex alio malum, Ter. 2 Fuxta deos in tua manu est, Tac. 4 Quibus ille secundum fratrem plurimum tribuebat, Cic. 5 Sub equestri finem certaminis, coorta est pugna peditum, Liv. 6 Proximus ab eo, Quint.

Note, If after in the End of a Sentence stand after its casual Word, reduce it to its proper Place; as, Consuls were made fifteen Years after, i. e. after fifteen Years; Annum post quintum decimum, Liv. Qui potuit Palinurus scire ea quæ post annos sexcentos facta sunt, A. Gell. l. 10. Longo post tempore venit, Virg.

Against, Adversus,—um, Contra.

Also In with Accusat. 1

After Motion, Ad, in. 2

Noting Defence or } A, ad. 3
Preservation, }

Before Time, In. 4

Signifying a little before, Sub. 5

Before Law, Will, Cu- } Præter. 6
stom, Right, Mind, }

{ Ex adverso, Dat. 7

{ Ex adversum, Accus. 8

{ Ex adversus, Accus. 9

Over against, { Adversum. 10

Contra. 11

E regione, 12 with a

Gen. or Dat.

1 Id quod apud est Platonem in Philosophos dictum, Cic. 2 Offendere ad stipitem, Col. 2 Erigere scalas ad mœnia, Liv. Pontus in scopulos undas erigit, Luc. Puppis offendit in scopulis, Ovid. 3 Defendo a frigore myrtos, Virg. Tecti esse ad alienos possumus, Cic. Ruta bibitur ad pectoris dolorem, Plin. 4 Sacrificium in diem posterum parat, Liv. 5 Sub adventum mariti, Hor. 6 Præter morem, atque legem civium. Præter æquum & bonum, Ter. Præter opinionem, or spem evenit. 7 Ex adverso ei loco, Ter. 8 Ex adversum Athenis apud Salamina classem suam constituerunt, Corn. Nep. 9 Ad ex adversus eum locum consecrata est, Cic. 10 Lero & Lero ad-

versum Antipolim, Plin. 11 Italiam contra, Virg. 12 E regione unius eorum pontium, Cæs. E regione castris castra posuerunt, Id.

Among, Inter.

Also { In, ad. 1 After dividing, in. 3
 { Apud. 2 From among, ex. 4
 Signifying of, ex. 5

1 Spargere voces in vulgum ambiguas, Virg. Hic in magnis viris non est habendus, Cic. Hic multum fletu ad superos Dardanidæ, Virg. Æn. l. 6. 2 Hinc apud Athenienses magna discordiæ orta, Cic. 3 Socios partitur in omnes vina, Virg. Æn. l. 1. 4 Quem unum ex cunctis delegissetis, Cic. 5 Tu ex amicis certis mihi es certissimus.

At, Apud.

Relating to Time { Ad, cum. 1
 or Occasion, { Sub, in. 2

Referring to something { In. 3
 said or done, during { Inter. 4
 some other Action, { Super. 5
 Before Will or Pleasure, { Ad. 6
 for according to, { Pro. 7

Before Leisure, Per. 8

Before a common Name { In, apud, ad. 9
 of a Place, { sometimes a,
 { pro, ante. 10

Before a proper Name {
 when it signifies Continuance, or being near { Ad. 11
 to it, { Apud. 12

Signifying in or near, { In. 13
 applied to some { A. 14
 Point of Time, {

1 Ad constitutum diem discedemus, Cic. Cum diluculo abiit, Plaut. 2 Ad nomen Thisbes oculos erexit, Ovid. Sub adventum Prætoris Romani, Panis agro Nolavo excessit, Liv. Nominis

mine in Hestoreo pallida semper eram, Ovid. 3 Vel beri in
convulso quam immodestus fuisti, Ter. 4 Si hoc tibi inter cæ-
nam accidisset, Cic. 5 De bujus nequitia in commune omnes
super cænam loquebantur, Plin. 6 Cum viderent se ad arbi-
trium libidinosæ mulieris spoliatum iri, Cic. 7 Ut omnia pro
arbitrio suofacit? Cic. 8 Spolia per otium legere, Id. 9 Est
in aure ima memoriæ locus, Plin. In schola. In foro. Apud fo-
rum, Ter. Ad urbem cum esset audivit, Cic. 10 A limine
salutare, Sen. A tergo. A contraria aure instillare, Plin.
At the Door, Pro foribus, Suet. Ad fores, Plaut. Ab ostio, Id.
Ante fores. 11 Prima quod ad Trojam pro charis gesserat Argis,
Virg. Fui ad Corinthum, Cic. Ignarus omnium quæ ad cibum
acta erant, Curt. 12 Exercitum lustravi apud Iconium, Cic.
13 Jam in principio id mihi placebat, Plaut. In exitu est jam
meus consulatus, Cic. In ipso discessu nostro, Id. In præsen-
tiarum, Tac. 14 A principio, Ter. Ab initio, Cic. Classis
in anchoris stetit, Flor. Rode at Anchor.

Before, Ante, in Time or Place.

A little before, Sub. 1

Before or in Presence, { Coram.
Apud. 2
Palam. 3
Ad. 4
Ante. 5

Before in Place, Pro. 6

Having after it Face, } Ante, in, ob. 7

Sight, Eyes, } Sub. præter, per. 8

1 Sub noctem. Sub exitu vitæ, Suet. 2 Res agitur apud ju-
dicem, Plaut. 3 Ubi hæc severus te palam laudaveram, Hor.
Ep. 11. Palam hoc ordine dicentem, si quippiam falsum est bis
palam refelle, Cic. in Sal. 4 Ad judicem res est, Plaut. Men.
4. 2. 5 Ante senatum tua Sica deprehensa est, Cic. 6 Sedens
pro ade castoris dixit, Cic. 7 Mihi ante oculos dies noctesque
versaris, Cic. In ora parentum filios jugulant, Sen. Verbor
coram in os te laudare, Ter. In oculis duo navigia submersa
sunt, Cæsar. Ob oculos mihi sæpe mors versata est, Cic. 8 Tanto
sub oculis accepto detrimento, Cæsar. Præter oculos Lælii omnia
ferebantur, Cic. Incedunt per ora nostra magnifice, Sal. A
fronæ atque a tergo, Before and behind.

Note

Note, After *Pauso*, *multo*, *longe*, *ante* is used, not *antea*; if it stand after a Part of Time, reduce it to its proper Place; as, *Two and twenty Years before*, *Ante duos & viginti annos*, Just. l. 17. c. 1.

Behind, *Pone*.

Also *Post*. 1 From behind, *Pone*. 2

1 *Tu post caecata latebas*, Virg. 2 *Pone prebendit pallio*, Ter.

Beside, or nigh to, *Juxta*, *Prope*, with or without *ad*.

Also	{	<i>Prope</i> , a 1
		<i>Propter</i> . 2
		<i>Secundum</i> . 3
		<i>Ad</i> . 4
		<i>Apud</i> . 5
		<i>Secus</i> . 6
		<i>Pro</i> . 7

1 *Tam prope a Sicilia*, Cic. in Verr. 7. 2 *Propter aquarivum*, Virg. 3 *Duo vulnera accepit, unum in stomacho, alterum in capite secundum aurem*, Cic. 4 *Habet hortos ad Tiberim*, Id. 5 *Apud eum sulpitius sedebat*, Id. 6 *Secus fluvios*, Plin. *Secus viam*, Fab. 7 *Interim reliquas Legiones pro ripa Euphratis locat*, Tac. Ann. l. 15.

Beside or except, *Prater*.

Also *Extra*. 1

Beside or over and above,	{	<i>Prater</i> . 2
		<i>Extra</i> . 3
		<i>Super</i> . 4
		<i>Ad</i> . 5

Beside or contrary to,	{	<i>Contra</i> . 6
		<i>Prater</i> . 7

1 *Neque cognatus, extra unam aniculam quisquam aderat*, Ter. 2 *Multa erant prater hec, &c.* Quint. 3 *Extra praedam quatuor millia deditorum habiti*, Liv. 4 *Super caetera flagitia*, Suet. 5 *Ad haec mala*, Ter. 6 *Contra legem, prater spem. Haud ab re duxi*, Liv. I thought it not amiss, or beside the Purpose.

Beyond,

Beyond, Ultra.

Also { Trans. 1
Super. 2
Extra. 3
Præter. 4

Beyond or above, { Præter. 5
Supra. 6
Extra. 7

Beyond with what, Ultra quam. 8

1 Ego eo ipso tempore trans mare fui, Cic. 2 Super Gar-
mantas & Indos proferet Imperium, Virg. Noſte ſuper media,
Id. 3 Facet extra ſidera tellus, Id. 4 Ita fugias ne præter
caſam, Ter. 5 Antici in eo genere præter cæteros excellunt,
Cic. 6 Supra modum. 7 Extra modum, Cic. 8 Ultra quam
ſatis eſt producitur, Cic.

By or through, Per; or with ſignifying
the Cauſe.

Also { A, de, e, ex. 1
Propter. 2

By or of, after Paſſives before } A. 3
the Caſe of the Doer,

Before Time, De, cum, per. 4

By or before, re- } Ante, ad. 5
lating to Time,

Before Names of Places, { Per.
Præter. 6
Secundum. 7

By reaſon of, Propter, per. 8

Put for according to, De, ex. 9

After Dealt or did, Cum. 10

Signifying of or concerning, De. 11

Before Way, Per, in, ex. 12

By the way, or by the bye, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Obiter.} \\ \text{In transcurso.} \\ \text{In transitu.} \end{array} \right.$

By Line, *Ad perpendicularum exigere*, Cic.

By Candle Light, *De luserna*, Petr.

By Moon Light, *Ad lunam*, Juv.

By Torch Light, *Ad lumina*, Suet. Jul.

1 Id se a Gallicis armis, atque insignibus cognovisse, Cæs.
 B. G. l. 1. Hic auctor tantum poteris a facundia, Ter. Qui
 mollet ab isto ense mori, Luc. De odore adesse me sentis, Plaut.
 Curc. 1. 1. De nostro curvum pondere gramen erat, Ovid.
 Gravida est e Pamphilo, Ter. Intellego ex tuis literis, Cic.
 2 Quod premium satis magnum est tam fidelibus servis propter
 iniquis vitis? Cic. pro Mil. 3 Nec tamen ista legi poterunt
 patienter ab ullo, Ovid. Fiat ab ingenio mollior ira meo, Id.
 4 Surgunt de nocte latrones, Hor. Cum prima luce, Cic. Cum
 diluculo abiit, Plaut. At pius Æneas per noctem plurima vol-
 vens, Virg. 5 Ante annum elapsum utrumque hoc effectum red-
 dam ad vesperam, Plaut. 6 Præter Thebas Demetriadem cur-
 sum dirigerent, Liv. 7 Si secundum mare ad me ire cepisset,
 Cic. for which sometimes in mari. 8 Nec cætera propter
 anni tempus facere possum, Cic. Neque per ætatem etiam pote-
 rat, Ter. 9 De compasto, Plaut. Ex consilio, Cic. Ex eventu,
 Id. De illius sententia atque auctoritate, Id. 10 Bene egissent
 Athenienses cum Miltiade, Val. Max. 11 Hoc illis de se non-
 dum liquet, Sen. 12 Per viam. In via. In itinere. Ex itinere,
 Cæs.

By or nigh to. See Besides.

For or because of, Ob, Propter.

Also $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{De, ad, pra, per, a. 1} \\ \text{Super. 2} \\ \text{Penes. 3} \end{array} \right.$

For or instead of, or $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Pro. 4} \\ \text{in Recompence of, } \end{array} \right.$

For or considering, Pro. 5

For with Sake, { Propter, 6
Pro. 7
Per 8

For or in Favour of, { A, pro, cum. 9
Secundum. 10

For signifying as, In, pro. 11

After Aptus, utilis, vatus, Ad, in. 12

Signifying the End } Ad, in. 13
or Purpose,

For with Good, E, in, Accus. 14

with Gain, In, Ablat. 15

For this or that Purpose, { Ad hoc } 16
In id.

Before Time, { In. 17
Ad, per. 18

As for, { De 19
Quod ad, } with or with-
Quantum ad, } out attinet.

1 Nec de imperio, sed pro salute demicare, Curt. Equid
not alias de fiducia ista? Ter. Id nisi gravi de causa non
fecisses, Cic. Panditur ad nullas janua nigra preces, Ovid.
Nec joculari prae cura poteram, Cic. Per leges id fieri non possum,
Quint. Per metum, Plin. Per necessitatem, Liv. A me pu-
dica est, Plaut. Curc. 1. 1. 2 Nec super ipse sua molitur
laude laborem, Virg. 3 Pluresque ejus rei causas adferbat
potissimam, penes incuriam virorum seminarumque, Tac. Ann.
1. 4. 4 Hoc tibi pro pramio erit, Cic. Ego pro te molam, Ter.
Pro tantis eorum in Rempub. meritis honores ei habeantur. Cic.
5 Duo silentia pro re nostra ego esse decrevi satis, Ter. 6 Vir-
tus propter se expetenda est, Cic. 7 Pro me senatus veneni
mutavit, Id. 8 Per causam exigenda pecunia, Suet. 9 Vide
ne hoc totum sit a me, Cic. Mulciber in Trojam, pro Troja sta-
bat Apollo, Ovid. Cum aliquo stare, Apul. 10 Multa secun-
dum causam nostram disputavit, Cic. 11 In pignus fidei obsides
desiderati sunt, Liv. Eduxit mater pro sua, Ter. 12 Natum
atque aptus ad veris flagitiosas libidines Timarchides, Cic.
Natus in miseriam, Ter. Homo ad nullam rem utilis, Cic.

13 *Ad usum hominum omnia creantur*, Id. *Ne dato ad penitentiam spatio*, Just. *Urit nocturna in lumina cedrum*, Virg. *Pisculos ferre obolo in canam seni*, Ter. 14 *Quid è Repub. censeam*, Tac. *Si in rem est utrique ut fiant*, Ter. 15 *In lucro est qua datur bora mihi*, Ovid. *Quicquid præter spem evenit omne id tu lucro esse putato*, Ter. 16 *Ad hoc scripsi*, A. Gell. in Præf. *In id sedulo diem Scipio extraxerat*, Cæs. 17 *In bœbidum Ikais vale*, Ter. *In futurum*. 18 *Ad brevissimum tempus*, Cic. *Tot per sæcula*, Juv. *Non licuit per otium*, Erasmi. 19 *De celebratione ludorum tibi assentior*, Cic.

From, *A, ab, abs.*

When it may have of, }
or out of after it, } *De, e, ex. 1*

1 *De cespite virgo se levat*, Ovid. *Et procul è tumulo inquit*, Id. *Equidem dicam ex animo quod sentio*, Cic.

Note, That *from* is always rendred by *ab* before a Vowel, and before a Consonant commonly by *a*, but sometimes by *ab*, where it may be done smoothly; namely, before Words that begin with *c, d, j, l, m, n, r, s, t*; as, *Ab Cn. Pompeio*, Cæs. *Ab diu*, Id. *Ab fove*. *Ab luctu*, Liv. *Ab multitudine*, Cæs. *Ab nocturno ludo*. *Ab rege*. *Ab se*. *Ab Tarquinis*, Id.

Abs is rarely used, when it is, we find it commonly before the Letters *q* or *s*; *Abs quisvis hominis*, Ter. *Abs re*, Id. *Abs re*.

In or Into, *In.*

Referring to Place, *Apud, ad. 1*

Sometimes *Pro, pra, a. 2*

Referring to Time, } *In, de, per. 3*
 } *Sub, super. 4*
 } *Intra, inter. 5*

Before a Person, *Penes. 6*

Before Power, *Cum. 7*

Before the Part }
affected, } *E. 8*

Before Sleep } *Per, Secundum. 9*
or Fast, } *Super, inter. 10*

Before

Before Order, Part, } E, ex. 11
or Opinion, }

Before Shape, Sub. 12

When it signifies the }
End or Purpose, and } In with Accus. }
may be varied by } sometimes Abl. } 13
for, }

Per omnia, In all Things, Colum.

1 *Mibi apud forum dixi, Ter. Brevi tempore ad urbem futurum, Cic. Ad inferos penas luent, Id. 2 Hac re pro suggesto nuntiata eodem die cum legionibus in senones proficiscitur, Cæ. Atque huic aliquid paulum præ manu dederis, Ter. A fronte legiones, Tac. In the Front. A tergo, ab extremo agmine, Cæ. In the Rear. 3 In tempore ipso mihi adveni, Ter. Surgunt de nocte latrones, Juv. Per ipsum induciarum tempus, Liv. 4 Quid? quæ te purâ solum sub nocte canentem audieram, Virg. Noctæ super mediâ, Id. 5 Intra annos quatuordecem testæ non subierunt, Cæ. Inter tot annos, Cic. 6 Culpa videatur penes patrem, Quint. 7 Cum potestate. Cum imperio esse, Cic. To be in Office or Authority. 8 E venibus laborare, Cic. 9 Visus est per quietem matri stuprum intulisse, Suet. Cujus imago secundum quietem sibi versata est. 10 Somnosque super, quid perdisis ævum? inquit, Stat. Theb. 5. v. 136. Quod illis sæpe minatus inter jocum fuerat, Suet. Per jocum promisi, Plaut. Cum per lasciviam contumaces flagelli cecidisset, Just. 11 Ex ordine. Magna ex parte, Cic. E meo animo, Plaut. 12 Et demum humana lustrò sub imagine terras, Ovid. 13 In ulsionem servati nepotis filium ejus interfecit, Just. Oratoribus præcipua materia in laudem principis assumpta est, Tac. In honorem Funonis, Hor. In honore decorum, Virg. Æn. 1. 3. v. 466.*

The Latins do generally use an Ablative after *in*, and an Accusative after *into*; yet we often find the contrary; *Oculos in pectore inferere, Ovid. At pelago Danaum insidias præcipitare jubent, Virg. Quid hac ait arce petisti? Ovid.* But especially an Accusative after *in*; *Ab exteris nationibus, quæ in amicitiam populi Romani ditionemque essent, injurias pro pulsare, Cic. in Verr. Quæ se considerant in opacæ viscera terre, Ovid. Quodque in tot lumina humanæ habebat extinctum*

est, Id. Cum vestros portus in prædorum fuisse potestatem
scimus, Cic. pro Leg. Manil. Ubi me videt in tantum bono-
rem, Ter. Vide A. Gell. l. 1, c. 7.

Of, De, e, ex.

For concerning, Super, Ablat. 1
Before the Ablat. of the Doer, A. 2
After Meteor, De. 3
Before Opinion, In. 4

1 Super hac re scribam tibi Rhigio, Cic. 2 Factum a nobis
fulte est, Ter. 3 De te neque re neque verbis merui ut faceres
quod facis, Plaut. Quid de tantum meruisti, Ter. 4 Ego in
ista sum sententia, Cic.

On or upon, Super.

After Motion Accusat. after Rest or Conti-
nuance Accusat. or Ablat. 1

Also In. 2

After spending, bestowing, } In. 3
or laying the Fault, }

After Verbs signifying } A ex, in. 4
to depend or hang, } De, ad, super. 5

Before Hand, Right, Left, } A, ad. 6
East, West, North, South, }

Before Side, De, e, ex. 7, secundum, in. 7

Before Time, In, ad. *

Before Account, De, per. 8

Before Condition or } In. 9

Terms, or Pain, } Sub. 10

On every Occasion. Ex. 11

To sit on Horseback, Ex. 12

On his Knees, De, per. 13

1 Super ipsa scuta salierunt, Flor. Sæva sedens super an-
no, Virg. Sedibus optatis gemina super arbore sedunt, Id. 2 In
regii corpus strati prociuit, Stat. Theb. 6. In aurem dormis
coronis

coronæ suæ in caput patris posita, A. Gell. Spem gregis ad si-
lice in vuda connixa reliquit, Virg. Et omne cum tot sideri-
bus calum requievit in illo, Ovid. 3 Consumpta in id opus in-
genti pecunia, Val. Max. Multitudinem beneficiorum in me
contulisti, Cic. Verum ne confers culpam in me, Ter. In
anno scorto maiorem pecuniam absumpsisti, Cic. 2 Phil. In Ci-
cere atque faba bona tu perdasque lupinis, Hor. L. 2. Sat. 3.
4 Casu pendemus ab uno, Luc. Crede mihi totam istam canti-
lenam ex hoc pendere, Cic. In sententiis omnium civium fa-
mam nostram fortunamque pendere. 5 De collo fistula pendet,
Virg. Ad matrem pendem pyra, Plin. Musa super virides
pendebant nabilia ramos, Buch. p. 137. 6 A dextra lavaque
dies & mensis & annus, Ovid. Met. L. 2. Est ad hunc ma-
num sacellum, Ter. Ab oriente æquinoctiali subsolanus, ab
oriente brumali vulturus, Plin. 7 Nam procul Illyricis laus
de parte relictis, Ovid. de Trist. Ex altera parte graviter,
ex altera acute sonant, Cic. Ne non equalis ab omni parte
foret, Ovid. Ab Sabinis, ab Romanis, Liv. Secundum re-
litum iudicio, Cic. Nam in utraque parte multa dicuntur, Cic.
Offic. In utramque partem, Id. * In hunc diem constituta sunt
nuptia, Ter. Ad Græcas Calendas, Suet. 8 Triumphalia
ornamenta nonnullis tribuit, nec uique de causa militari, Suet.
Ner. c. 15. Per causam exigentia pecunia, Id. Jul. 9 Cum
in eas conditiones convenisset, Liv. 10 Subere ei præmium
tribui sub ea conditione, Cic. Sub prælo mortis. 11 Ex omni
occasione, Plin. 12 Ex equo pugnare, Id. 13 De genu pugnare,
Sen. Per genus orare, Suet. Nero. c. 17.

Over, Supra or Super. 1

Over noting Power, In. 2

After Triumph or Victory, De. 3

Over or through, Trans, per. 4

Over, not through, Trans. 5

Over, with all, Per, in. 6

1 Olli carulem supra caput assitit imber, Virg. Locatis su-
per capita armis, Curt. 2 Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis,
Hor. 3 Postquam de Paris triumphaverat, A. Gell. l. 3. c. 4.
Et hæc fuit de nobis prima victoria, Flor. l. 3. c. 1. Victoriæ
de Persis causam majoris belli fore, Just. l. 11. At Romæ
prima Tropæa de Parthis, Tac. 4 Trans mare hic venit

asportet, Plaut. *Te vel per Alpium iuga sequemur*, Hor.
 7 *Cineres trans caput jace*, Virg. 6 *Per totum res est notissima*
 Lesbon, Ovid. *Hæc fuit in toto notissima fabula calo*, Id.

Over against. Vide Against.

Over and above. Vide Beside.

Out of, *De, e, ex*.

Signifying away from, *A*. 1

Signifying out of Reach of, *Extra*. 2

Signifying by Reason, *Propter*. 3

1 *Ab eorum oculis concede*, Cic. 2 *Extra periculum: telli-
 sum*, Sen. 3 *Multi bella sæpe quaesiverunt propter gloriae
 cupiditatem*, Cic.

Till or until, *Usque* or *Usque ad*.

Also *Ad*, *in*. 1

Signifying Before, *Ante*. 2

1 *Ad nonam horam expectat*, Cæs. *Sermonem in multam
 noctem produximus*, Cic. 2 *Novum crimen, & ante hunc diem
 inauditum*, Cic.

To, *Ad*.

Used commonly after Verbs of Motion, ap-
 plying, adding, belonging, calling, inviting,
 exhorting, provoking. And after Adjectives
 signifying Readiness, Forwardness, Fitness.

Signifying In Comparison of, *Ad*, *pro*. 2

To or concerning, *Ad*, *de*. 3

After Verbs of speaking, } *Apud*, *adversum*,
 complaining, accusing, &c. } *cum*, *contra*. 4

To before Power, *Pro*. 5

To put for with, *Cum*. 6

To put for as or for, *In*. 7

Put for towards, } *In*, *erga*. 8

Put for against, } *Adversus*. 9

Before

Before a Word of Time, } In. 10
noting Delay,

To the same Purpose, In 11

After fasten sometimes A. 12

As to, De, ad, a, quoad, } 13
quod ad, quantum ad.

After Swear, In. *

2 Nihil ad Persum, Cic. Illos pra se agrestes putat, Id.
3 Nimis lepide fecit verba ad parvum, Plaut. Sequitur
ut de una reliqua parte honestatis dicendum sit, Cic. 4 Eam
collaudavit apud amicos, Cic. Cur ego apud te mentiar, Plaut.
Aut me aliquid de illa adversum hunc loqui, Ter. Andr. 1. 5.
Cum Jove visa queri est, Ovid. Contra quem talia satir Bu-
rialus, Virg. 5 Pro virili parte. Pro viribus. Pro facultate,
Cic. 6 Hanc habere capi cum suo magno probro. Ter.
7 Quicquid inter Hellisponium & Euphratem est, in dotem filia
offert. Curt. 8 Tua in me clarissima & maxima beneficia ex-
aminerunt, Cic. Benevolentiam tuam erga me prospicio, Id.
9 Utendum excusatione adversus eos, Cic. 1. Offic. 10 Spes
prorogatur militi in alium diem, Plant. 11 In eandem sen-
tentiam, Cic. 12 Gramineo ripae religavit ab aggera classem,
Virg. 13 De Tullia mea tibi assentior, Cic. Faciam id
quod est ad severitatem lenius, ad communem salutem utilius,
Cic. Sumus imperatum a militia, tum a pecunia, Id. Quoad
feras, Id. Quod ad Pomponiam, Id. Quod ad eam civitatem
attinet, Id. Quantum ad Porticam, Plin. Quantum ad anti-
quos nostros, Var. * Furare in Verba magistrum, Hor. Di-
vosque in vota vocabis, Virg.

Towards, Erga.

Also In, adversus. 1

After Verbs of Motion, } Ad, versus, 2
or denoting Prospect, } Ad with versus,
in. 3

Before Time, Sub, in. 4

Signifying with Respect to, A. 5

2 Accipit

1 Accipit in Teucros animam, mentemque benignam, Virg.
 At non Achilles talis in hoste fuit, Id. Adhibenda est quæ-
 dam reverentia adversus homines, Cic. 2 Ad me affectam
 viam, Ter. Spectat potissimum ad hibernos ortus, Var. Cum
 Atoriorum versus castra movisset, Cic. 3 Ea parte in qua pluri-
 mum erat agri Romani ad mare versus, Fest. Acie conversa
 in orientem, Flor. 4 Sub noctem naues solvit, Cæs. Aspi-
 rant aura in noctem, Virg. Æn. L. 7. Cappadocia movebat,
 qua patet a Syria, Cic. Leviter a summo reflexum est, Id.

Under, Sub, Subter

Sub after Rest or Continuance takes common-
 ly an Ablative.

After Motion an Accusative.

Subter takes always an Accusative, except
 among the Poets.

Referring to Government, **Sub**. 1

To Dignity or Order, **Infra**. 2

Referring to Number, **Infra**, **intra**. 3

To Degree, **Infra**. 4

To Colour or Pretence, **Per**, **Sub**. 5

1 **Sub** Fove mundus erat, Ovid. 2 **Infra** Eurapolum Cy-
 baris accubuit, Cic. 3 Non **infra** duodenos (pedes) habent,
 Plin. **Intra** decem & octo annos tenerum & obnoxium injuria
 juvenem viderunt, Liv. 4 **Infra** famam esse, Quint. **Under**
 Report, 5 **Per** simulationem amicitia me nefarie prodiderunt,
 Cic. **Per** hanc fidem deceptus, Liv. **Sub specie** pacis, Id.

Up to, Tenu.

It governs a Genitive plural, or an Ablative
 singular, rarely plural.

Alto Usque ad, as *A solo usque ad fenestras*,
 Hier.

With. Cum, noting Company.

Also Ad.

Noting Power or Prevalency, **Apud**. 2

Applied

The APPENDIX.

209

Applied to a Person with } *Apud.* 3
Respect to his House or } *Ad.* 4
Custody, } *Penes.* 5

After Verbs signifying to begin, *A.* 6

After Verbs of filling, *De.* 7

1 *Eaque nunc est ad uxorem tuam*, Ter. Hec. 3. 1. 2 *Apud me plurimum valet*, Cic. *Non est ulla res qua plus apud eum polleat*, Id. 3 *Sin ea est causa retinendi apud vos*, Ter. Hec. 4 *Quum ad eum cenassemus*, A. Gell. 19. 7. 5 *Istac jam penes vos psalteria est*, Ter. 6 *Ab eo exordiri volui*, Cic. 7 *Hoc nisi de fulva loculos implere moneta non deses*, Mart. L. 14.

Within, Intra.

Before a Word of Time, *Cis, in, intra,*
ad. 1

From within, Intus. 2

1 *Cis paucos dies*, Plaut. *In paucis diebus quibus hac abba sunt*, Ter. Andr. *Intra horam desinet*, Sen. *Ad annum*, Cic. 2 *Ecquis intra exis*, Plaut.

Without opposed to with, Sine, absque.

Also *Extra*; as, *Sum extra noxam*, Ter.

Absque is chiefly in Use among the Comic Poets; and in them only when it may be varied into *but for*; in which Case it is not lawful to use *sine* or *extra*; as, *Absque te esset bodie nunquam ad solis occasum viverem*, Plaut. *Absque te esset periissem*, Ter. *Without you, or but for you.*

• *Unknown or Privy to, Clam.*

With an Ablative, anciently an Accusative.

Also *Clanculum*; as, *Clanculum patres que faciunt*, Ter.

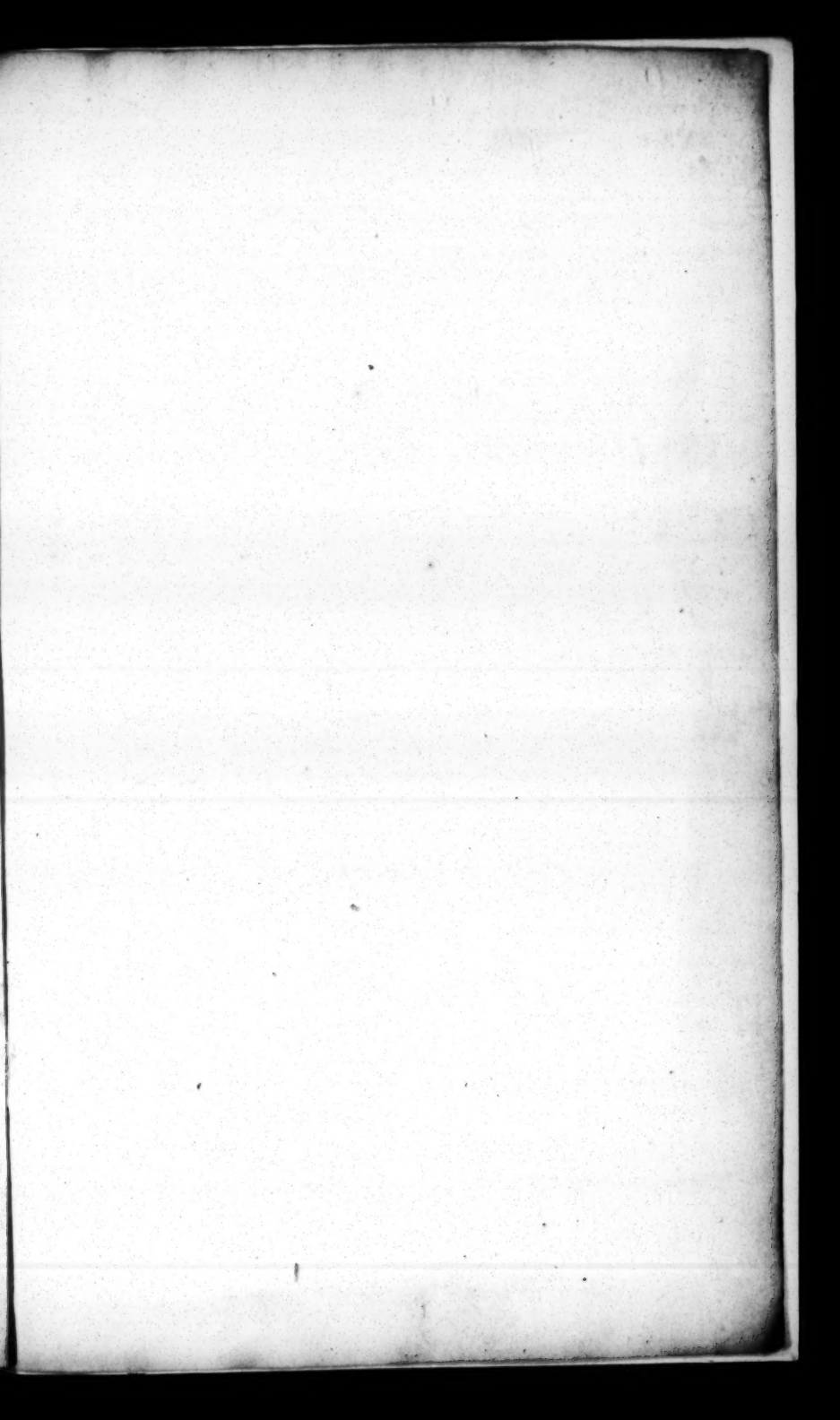
Note, That of these Prepositions *Penes* may, and *Versus* must be set after his casual Word: And also *cum* after *me*, *se*, *se*, *nobis* and *vobis*; and commonly after the Ablative singular and plural of *qui*. Also most other Prepositions are found after their casual Word among the Poets, by the Figure *Anastrophe*.

ERRATA.

Page 24, Line ult. dele last. P. 32. l. 30, Verbs of Ac-
cusing. P. 34, l. 24, for after read before. p. 46. l. 24,
Anibors, l. 27, ultra. p. 72, l. 25, collibitum. p. 76, l. 17,
for Ch. 14, r. Ch. 13. p. 78, l. 5, satagentibus. l. 17, used.
p. 102, l. 2, meretricum. p. 109, l. 17, tibi. p. 111, l. 21,
comē. p. 119, l. 24, for vestior r. vestio. p. 124, l. 11, ca-
tera. p. 128, l. 18, culpa. p. 130, l. 15, tor fugitivus r. fu-
git. p. 131, l. 5, comitatum. p. 138, l. 9, Historians. p. 140,
l. 18, mollibus. p. 141, l. 36, onerarias. p. 143, l. 1, candide.
ib. l. 8, rarusca. ib. l. 24, Reipub. p. 145, l. 13, for Parti-
ciple r. Particle. p. 163, l. 11, tantumne. ib. hacine. p. 166,
l. 9, de. p. 171, l. 16, nocte. p. 177, l. 13, abolenda. p. 183,
l. 18, involem. p. 186, l. 6, for never r. scarce ever.



F I N I S.



12511 d7

Elizabeth Leysen